London. C J CLAY AND SONS,
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
AVE MARIA LANE
Glasgow 263, ARGYLE STREET



Leipzig F A. BROCKHAUS
New York MACMILLAN AND CO
Bombay GEORGE BELL AND SONS

THE ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

BY

ALFRED S WEST, M A

TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,
FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON

STEREOTYPED EDITION

CAMBRIDGE
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
1895

[*All Rights reserved*]

First Edition 1893 *Reprinted* 1894, 1895

PREFACE.

THIS book contains the Elements of English Grammar, but it does not profess to be a complete manual of the English Language Boys and girls from thirteen to seventeen years of age are the readers whose wants it has been written to supply For a treatise intended to meet the requirements of older students, a different choice of materials would often have been made, and the materials chosen would have been treated in a different fashion Hence it will be found that in the following pages no mention is made of some of the questions which are discussed in larger works, that other questions are touched upon, but not probed to the bottom, that here and there a definition lacks completeness, logical accuracy being sacrificed to intelligibility, and that the details of early English accidence have been inserted only when modern forms would be inexplicable without them There are elementary books which furnish information so copious that young readers cannot see the wood for the trees One who undertakes to instruct boys and girls needs constantly to bear in mind ὅσῳ πλέον ἥμισυ παντός—how much the half is greater than the whole, in order that

he may avoid 'the human too much' The things which have been deliberately left out of this small volume would have made a big book

When we reflect that of every hundred boys and girls now learning English Grammar probably not more than one will ever read a page of any English author who wrote before the age of Elizabeth, it seems needlessly cruel to the remaining ninety-and nine to inflict upon them the exhaustive study of historical English accidence The average pupil, for whom the English Grammar lesson means mastering lists of strong verbs in half a dozen conjugations,—or learning that the comparative of *near* has assumed such diverse forms as *nyra*, *nearra*, *nerre*, *nere*, *nerer*, or that the word *which* has at different times been written *hwile*, *whule*, *whulch*, *wuch*, *wich*, and *whilk*,—deserves our sympathy when he complains that English Grammar is rather dull Tell him that "English Grammar without a reference to the older forms must appear altogether anomalous, inconsistent, and unintelligible," and he will say that, if it is necessary to encounter grim battalions of these older forms on every page, the subject had better be left severely alone, since it is hardly worth while going through so much to get so little

Dull, no doubt, some parts of English Grammar, and of any other grammar, inevitably are, but the subject as a whole is far from being so dull as teachers and treatises frequently succeed in making it A good teacher, who takes an interest in the matter himself, will secure the interest of a class of quite small boys,—not merely of the good boys at the top, but of the rank and file, of all, indeed, save the hopeless residuum who 'have taken the whole of science' for their aversion,—while he sketches for them the gradual growth of our language, or talks over

with them the difference between Common and Proper nouns, or tells them the derivation of curious words like *liquorice*, or *treacle*, or *rhubarb*, or supplies them with faulty sentences which are to be pulled to pieces and put right Yet even these topics may be so handled as to produce depressing results

An hour a week is the time usually allotted to the study of English Grammar at those schools in which the conflict of studies allows it a place in the educational routine A class reading every week seven pages of this book will work its way to the end in the course of the school year. No attempt has been made to divide the contents into 'Lessons,' since the number of pages suitable for senior students would be too many for juniors As each chapter usually completes the treatment of some important and distinct branch of the subject, the chapters vary greatly in length, and the amount to be prepared for each lesson must be determined at the discretion of the master

Of the Questions at the end of the Chapters, most have been chosen from the Cambridge Local Examination Papers of the last twenty years, the Oxford Local Examination Papers and the Papers of the Royal College of Preceptors have furnished others, and a few have been made for their present purpose They are of very different degrees of difficulty Occasionally they raise points which are interesting, but not important enough to deserve discussion in the text of the chapter to which they are attached In such cases solutions or helps towards solution have been added At the close of a protracted exposition of an abstract principle, the practical teacher often has cause to feel that he has been beating the air, when the use of a concrete example enables him to drive his point home at once To meet his needs, a good supply of

sentences for correction has been added to the concluding chapters on Syntax. There is reason to hope that the boys and girls who attack these problems will find the benefit, not merely in the confidence with which they will face the Examiner, whom most young seekers after Truth nowadays expect to meet round the other side of the Tree of Knowledge, but also in the formation of the habit of thinking for themselves. In this case the English Grammar lesson will prove to be a means of education and not simply an opportunity for instruction.

The matter contained in these pages has but slight claims to originality The writer of an elementary textbook, traversing ground well-trodden by many predecessors, would probably go astray, if he endeavoured at any cost to be original Many of the following chapters owe something, and occasionally they owe much, to Mr Mason's *English Grammar* and to Prof Bain's *Higher English Grammar* Use has been made also of Dr Gow's suggestive *Method of English*, of Dr Angus's *Handbook of the English Tongue* (in which the principles of syntax are discussed with more than the ordinary detail), of Mr Low's *English Language*, of Prof Meiklejohn's *English Language*, of Dr Abbott's *How to Parse*, of Mr Hewitt's *Manual of our Mother Tongue*, of Dr Morris's *Historical Outlines of English Accidence*, and of Prof Skeat's *Etymological Dictionary* Acknowledgment of indebtedness to these and to other writers has in some places been made, but much of the well-worn material, of which an elementary work on English Grammar must be composed, is the common property of all who choose to write upon the subject.

My cordial thanks are due to several Cambridge friends for criticisms and suggestions which have enabled me to improve in many respects the original draft of this book

Among them I must mention Mr A W W Dale, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity Hall, Mr R T Wright, late Fellow and Tutor of Christ's College, and Mr J. H Flather, of Emmanuel College To Mr Flather I am under especial obligations for his sacrifice of many hours of the Long Vacation to the task of revision At the same time it must be clearly understood that, for the shortcomings of the following pages, the responsibility rests entirely with me.

ALFRED S WEST

38, BATH ROAD, CHISWICK,
November 1st, 1893

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I	Historical Survey	1
II	Constituents of the English Vocabulary	9
III	The Indo-European or Aryan Family of Languages	21
IV	The Divisions of Grammar	29
V	Elementary Sounds in English	36
VI	Signs or Letters	53
VII	Etymology	61
VIII	Nouns	68
IX	Inflexion of Nouns I Gender	78
X	Inflexion of Nouns II Number	84
XI	Inflexion of Nouns III Case	91
XII	Adjectives	100
XIII	Inflexion of Adjectives	108
XIV	Pronouns	114
XV	Verbs	129
XVI	Inflexions of Verbs	135
XVII	Auxiliary and Defective Verbs	164
XVIII	Adverbs	171
XIX	Prepositions	177
XX	Conjunctions and Interjections	182
XXI	Compounds and Derivatives	189
XXII	Analysis of Sentences and Parsing	197
XXIII	Syntax of Nouns	217
XXIV	Syntax of Adjectives and Pronouns	228
XXV	Syntax of Verbs	240
XXVI	Syntax of Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions	254
	Appendix I Definitions of Grammatical Terms	269
	Appendix II Passages for Analysis	275
	Index	283

THE ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

CHAPTER I.

Historical Survey

1 **Britons and Englishmen** The people who lived in our island fifteen hundred years ago were not Englishmen, nor did they speak the English language. When, in our flights of rhetoric or poetry, we declare that we glory in the name of Britons, or sing that Britons never shall be slaves, our intentions are patriotic, but our language is apt to be misleading Britons we may indeed call ourselves, if in doing so we mean nothing more than this, that we are inhabitants of Britain But when we speak of ourselves as Britons, or as a British race, let us bear in mind such facts as these —that we are in the main of English origin, that our English forefathers conquered the Britons, deprived them of their lands, and made many of them slaves, that the English settled in the country belonging to the Britons, and that their descendants have remained here ever since Firmly grasping these truths, we may, if we like, apply the name of Britons to our fellow-countrymen, just as we apply the name of Great Britain to our country No danger of misconception lurks in the use of the word

'Britain' as the geographical name of our island, for our island remains the same it is the population which has changed.

2 **The Roman Conquest.** As the result of his invasions in B C 55 and the following year, Julius Caesar exacted from the British tribes the payment of an annual tribute to Rome His advance into the country reached only as far as St Albans, and nearly a century passed before the Romans returned In the year A.D 43, the Roman legions were sent to Britain again, and in the course of the next forty years the country was reduced to subjection as far as the Tyne Half a century later, the limit of Roman conquest was pushed further north to the Clyde The Romans held the country as we hold India to-day They did not intermarry with the Britons as they intermarried with the natives of Gaul or of Spain Their occupation of Britain was a military occupation, and the Britons preserved their own language, though it was not until A D 410 that the Romans, after a tenure of nearly four hundred years, finally left the island

3 **The Britons were a Keltic race,** and in some parts of our islands a Keltic language is still spoken Welsh is a Keltic dialect, so is Manx, so is the native Irish, or Erse, so is the dialect of the Highlands of Scotland[1] If we wish to have a notion of the sort of language which an ancient Briton spoke, we must remember that it was like the Welsh of to day and therefore very different from English The people of South Britain called themselves *Cymry*, as the Welsh call themselves now *Cambria* and *Cumbria* preserve for us this name 'Cymry' in a Latin form

4 **The English Conquest** In the year A.D 449, a generation after the departure of the Romans, Hengist

[1] Lowland Scotch is an English dialect

the Jute settled in Kent, and in the course of a century the conquest of the country was for a second time fairly complete The account of the successive invasions,—first of Jutes, then of Saxons, and then of Angles, all closely allied tribes,—must be looked for in a history of the English people, not in a book on the English speech But to these two questions an answer ought to be given here.

(1) **Who were these settlers?**
(2) **Where did they come from?**

(1) They were **Teutonic** tribes The people, whom we call Germans, call themselves *Deutsch* The word is familiar to us in the form *Dutch* The Romans, getting as near as they could to the name by which these German tribes called themselves, made the word *Teuton* and gave it a Latin declension From this we derive the convenient term *Teutonic* If we pronounce the stems of *Teut on* and of *Deut-scher* with their proper vowel sounds, the resemblance is close We disguise this resemblance by giving to the vowel of the word *Teutonic* the sound of the *eu* in *feud* We use the word *Teutonic* to signify 'belonging to the German race,' but if we said that English, or Dutch, or Flemish, was a 'German' language, the term might be misleading, as we commonly employ the word *German* in a narrower sense, to signify the language spoken to-day in Berlin and taught at school to English boys and girls who are said to be 'learning German' This German which is spoken at the present day in Germany is itself one of the Teutonic dialects

Thus the Jutes and Saxons and Angles were very different people from the Britons The Jutes, Saxons, and Angles,—or to call them by a collective name, the *English*, —were Teutonic tribes Their speech was akin to Dutch, and it was the parent of our own The Britons were a Keltic race, and their language was as different from the

language of their Saxon conquerors as the Welsh language of to-day is different from our modern English

(2) To find the district from which these tribes came, we must turn to the map of North Germany and Denmark

The Angles are believed to have come from the duchy of Schleswig

Crossing its northern border we pass into Jutland, which is part of Denmark The south of Jut-land was probably the home of the Jutes

If we move southwards again into Holstein, we find on the west coast two rivers forming respectively its northern and southern boundaries, the Eider and the Elbe From this neighbourhood it is supposed that the Saxons came

Neglecting these details, we may remember that **the English people came from Schleswig-Holstein,** or that the English people came from the country to the north of the mouth of the Elbe, that they came between the years A D 450 and 550, and that having come they stayed

As the district from which these invaders came is a low-lying, flat part of the continent, we call them **Low Germans,** to distinguish them from their Teutonic kinsmen living in the interior of the country, where the ground is higher What we call to day the 'German' language is *High German* Dutch, Flemish, spoken in parts of Belgium, and Frisian, still spoken in the districts from which our ancestors came, are Low German dialects Thus the terms *High* and *Low*, as applied to German, have a geographical origin No stigma of inferiority is attached to us when we are described as a 'Low German' race

5 What became of the Keltic race, the Britons?

They were driven into the west and the north of the island,—into Devon and Cornwall, into Wales, into West-

moreland and Cumberland Those who remained in the parts which were under English rule were made slaves Their Keltic language was spoken only amongst themselves Henceforth the language of the country was English

6 **Anglo Saxon** We often come across the word *Anglo Saxon* Does it mean—

(1) *Angles and Saxons*, as these tribes were the principal settlers in Britain? Or does it mean—

(2) *Saxons of England*, as distinguished from Saxons of North Germany?

To this question no decided answer can be given, nor is it a matter of much importance to settle the point one way or the other When Saxons and Angles were united in England against a common enemy, they called themselves 'Englishmen' If the use of the word leads people to think that the 'Anglo-Saxons' were of a different race from ourselves, it will be well to drop the term If on the other hand it is understood that the so-called Anglo Saxons were our forefathers, there is some convenience in keeping the word *Anglo Saxon* to denote a stage in the history of the English language

7 **Roman missionaries** Our English forefathers were heathen We preserve relics of their worship in the names of the days of the week Roman missionaries were sent to this country in the year A D 597 to teach them Christianity Latin became again one of the tongues of Britain, the language of its worship and of its literature Trade brought in other words from a Latin source

8 **The Northmen.** During two and a half centuries, from about A.D 800 to 1050, England was exposed to frequent inroads of the Danes, or Northmen, inhabitants of Scandinavia and not merely of Denmark These Northmen, from Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, were a Teutonic race, so they were akin to the English whom they harassed, but we place them in a group apart from High or Low Germans and call this group the *Scandinavian*

9 **The Norman Conquest** The Normans, who established themselves in our country in A D 1066, were originally, like the Danes, Northmen or Scandinavians,

But they had been settled on French soil for about 150 years and had acquired a French dialect, the French of northern France, called the *langue d'oïl* The word *oïl*, the same word as *oui*, signifies *yes* The *langue d'oïl* was the dialect in which people said *oïl* for *yes*, as distinguished from the *langue d'oc* in which they said *oc* This French language was in the main a form of Latin, containing, however, a certain amount of Keltic, for the Gauls were a Keltic race, though they adopted the speech of their Roman conquerors So the French influence upon our English tongue is really a Latin influence in disguise

10 **The Revival of Learning** The sixteenth century is the time of the Revival of Classical Learning, or of the Renaissance as it is sometimes called The capture of Constantinople by the Turks in A D 1453 had caused the flight of the cultured Greeks who lived there, and they sought refuge in the cities of Italy To Florence flocked eager students out of many lands to acquire from these learned exiles a knowledge of ancient literature Curiosity respecting Greek and Roman antiquities spread widely, and Greek and Latin writers were zealously read The consequence was that an enormous number of new words, borrowed directly from the Latin, passed into our English vocabulary Hundreds of words were introduced and dropped, as there was no need of them hundreds more remained Very different was the way in which words of Latin origin came in at this time from the way in which they came in under the influence of the Norman Conquest At the Revival of Learning the words were borrowed by scholars from books Under the Norman kings they were introduced by the daily speech of foreigners who had taken our England and made it their own

11 Other incidents in our history deserve mention in an account of the influence of political events on the formation of our speech Thus, in the reign of Mary, Spanish

influence was strong, in the reign of Charles II, French influence was strong, under William III, Dutch influence was strong And we may therefore expect to find Spanish and French and Dutch words, which secured a footing in our language at these times But such words are few

12 We will close this chapter with a short **summary of the chief historical events** which have affected the formation of our English speech as it exists to-day, and in the next chapter we shall say something about the character of the words which we owe to these events

1 The original inhabitants of this country were Britons, a Keltic race, speaking a language like Welsh They were subjugated by the Romans, who remained here from A D 43 to 410 They were then subjugated by the Jutes, Saxons, and Angles, tribes belonging to the Low German branch of the Teutonic stock These English people came from the district north of the mouth of the Elbe at different times between A D 450 and 550, and their descendants have stayed in this country ever since

2 A D 600 to 1000 The Christian missions introduced some words of Latin origin, and the growth of trade brought in others

3 A D 800 to 1050. The Danes made frequent incursions, and from 1017 to 1042 Danish kings ruled in England By 'Danes' are meant not only people of Denmark, but people of Norway and Sweden also Like the English they were a Teutonic race, but we call theirs the Scandinavian branch

4 A D 1066 to 1400 The Normans were also originally Scandinavians, but they had adopted the language of France during their occupation of that country for 150 years before they conquered England, and for 150 years after their conquest of England,—until the death of John and the final severance of England from Normandy,—great efforts

were made to extend the use of the French language in this country The French language is in the main a form of Latin, though the Gauls were a Keltic race

5 The Revival of Letters, or of Classical Learning, or the Renaissance, affected our language from the time of Henry VII to the end of Charles I 's reign, *i e* during the 16th and the first half of the 17th century

CHAPTER II.

Constituents of the English Vocabulary

13 In the previous chapter we mentioned the leading events in the history of our country which have exercised an influence upon the formation of our language as it exists to-day In this chapter we shall answer the question,— **What sorts of words do we owe to these events** in our history?

14 I **Keltic words in English** The Keltic words in our ordinary English speech are few Of Keltic names of places there are many, such as *Aber-*, *Pen-*, *Llan-*, *Caer-*, but geographical names have no claim to be reckoned as a part of our ordinary vocabulary The English invaders no doubt adopted some of the words which the Britons used, names of things with which as slaves the Britons would have to do, words belonging to the farm or kitchen Of these, *darn*, *mop*, *pool*, *glen*, are perhaps examples But more of our Keltic words came to us through the Norman French, for, as was said in the first chapter, the Gauls were a Keltic race, who adopted the language of their Roman conquerors, but preserved some of their old Keltic words in their French speech The Keltic words which passed into English through a Norman French channel are neither numerous nor dignified *Basket*, *cabin*, *hog*, *paunch*, *rasher*, will serve as examples Again, in later times, when we

came to know more of the Highlands of Scotland, after 1745, and more also of Ireland, we borrowed a few words from their Keltic dialects From the Scotch we took the words *clan*, *kilt*, from the Irish, *whisky*, *shamrock* Altogether our indebtedness to Keltic is very slight We may sum it up thus

1 Geographical names, which are no part of our ordinary vocabulary

2 A few words handed down from the original Britons

3 A few more introduced through the Norman French

4. A few borrowed at a modern date from the Scotch and Irish

16 II The Latin Element in English Though the Romans held this country for nearly four hundred years, they left us no Latin words in our vocabulary as a legacy from their occupation But it must be remembered that the Romans never came in contact with the English after the English had established themselves here. The Romans took their final departure in A D 410, and it was not until A.D 449 that the first English settlement was made The Romans probably introduced many Latin words into the language of the Britons, but the Britons contributed very few words to our English speech, and of those which they did contribute none happened to be of Latin origin We can trace the effect of Roman occupation however in several names of places When we meet with a word like *Don-caster*, or *Circen-cester*, or *Chester*, we recognise the Latin *castra* and know that these places were once Roman military stations So in *Lin-coln* we have *colonia* in *Wall's End* and *Old Bailey*, *vallum* appears in disguise When the English arrived and found a place called 'Chester,' they would continue to call it

'Chester,' just as when we occupied New South Wales and found a place called 'Wagga-Wagga,' we continued to call it 'Wagga-Wagga,' and in this way we may say that the Romans have left their mark upon our language But their influence is seen only in a few geographical names This Latin element is sometimes called the *Latin of the First Period*

16 In A.D 597, St Augustine was sent by Pope Gregory to teach Christianity to the English, and in the course of the next four centuries several Latin words, connected with the Christian faith and ritual, were introduced into the language. Translations from Latin originals brought in others Commerce was extending also between England and other European nations, from whom were borrowed terms of Latin origin, new names for new things Let us picture to ourselves the influence which a missionary settlement would have to-day upon the language of a tribe of African savages From the Christian teachers they would borrow such words as *bible*, *hymn-book*, *chapel*, and add this English element to their African speech Then after a while the trader would follow, and the language of the natives would be enriched with such words as *rifle*, *gunpowder*, *gin* In like manner, between the years A D 600 and 1000, Roman ecclesiastics introduced words of which *altar*, *creed*, *font*, *preach*, are examples, while, in consequence of enlarged knowledge owing to extended trade, such words as *cheese*, *cook*, *linen*, *poppy*, *pear*, found their way into our language This Latin is called the *Latin of the Second Period*

17 We saw that **Norman French**, though it contained a considerable Keltic element, was in the main a language of Latin origin Hence we may say that the words which we owe to our Norman conquerors are Latin words which have come into the language indirectly, Latin words 'once removed' This Latin element is called the *Latin of the Third Period*

Now, if we consider how complete the Norman Conquest was and how rapidly it was effected, we may feel some surprise that it is an English language and not a French language which we speak to-day Norman lords occupied the lands from which English owners had been ejected Normans held the higher offices in church and state Deliberate efforts were made to extend the use of the French language Boys at grammar schools had to turn Latin into French Cases in the law-courts were carried on in French Yet in spite of all, English survived and prevailed One important event which contributed largely to this result was the loss of the French possessions in John's reign (1206) Norman barons had to make their choice between life in France and life in England, and those who settled in England at length threw in their lot with the English and ceased to be French Then again the war with France in Edward III 's reign made everything French unpopular In this reign boys were no longer required to construe their Latin into French, and English was used instead of French in the law-courts

To the Normans we owe words originally of Latin origin relating to such subjects as—

1 **feudalism** *e g* 'homage,' from *homme*, for by this process the vassal became the lord's man, 'fealty' = 'fidelity', 'esquire' and 'scutcheon,' from *scutum*, 'a shield'

2 **law** *e g* 'attorney,' 'assize,' 'plaintiff,' 'sue,' from *suivre*, Lat *sequor*

3 **hunting** *e g* 'chase,' 'covert,' 'leveret,' 'venison' (Lat *venor*, 'to hunt'), 'quarry,' meaning 'game,' from Lat. *cor*, 'the heart,' so 'entrails'

4 **war** *e g* 'chivalry,' 'battle,' 'trumpet,' 'vizor'

The Normans gave us many more words which do not come under these heads An interesting example of the way in which the language of a country illustrates its

history is supplied by the names of certain animals and of the meats which they furnish When the beast is alive, we call it an *ox*, or a *sheep*, a *calf*, or a *pig* These are English words When it is cooked for the table, we call it *beef*, *mutton*, *veal*, *pork* These are French words From these facts we might draw the inference that the English peasant looked after the stock on the farm, and his Norman master ate the joints in the hall Sir Walter Scott puts this point forcibly in *Ivanhoe*

18 *The Latin of the Fourth Period* comprises those words of Latin origin which were introduced in swarms during the time of the **Revival of Classical Learning**, or have passed into our language **since that date** The age of the Tudors was one in which men's minds expanded rapidly, and new ideas required new words for their expression The Reformation in religion, the diffusion of literature owing to the recent invention of printing, the discovery of America, progress in science,—all these things rendered the old vocabulary inadequate, and the fashionable study of classical authors showed where fresh words were to be found For one who has learnt a little Latin, it is an easy matter to identify a Fourth-Period word on the page of a modern book From the same Latin original we may have another word, which has come to us through the Norman French, disguised beyond easy recognition in the course of centuries of oral transmission Compare the following

Original Latin	Borrowed directly	Through Norman French
captivum	captive	caitiff
factionem	faction	fashion
factum	fact	feat
fidelitatem	fidelity	fealty
persequor	persecute	pursue
seniorem	senior	sir
tractum	tract	trait
traditionem	tradition	treason

In the classical form assumed by several words of

Norman French origin, we see another consequence of the New Learning Thus *dette* was changed to *debt*, *vitaille* to *victual*, *aventure* to *adventure*

19 Let us bring together in a summary form the results of our discussion of the **Latin element in modern English** The four leading events are these

1 **Roman occupation of Britain,** A D 43 to 410 Latin words found only in names of places, *e g Dorchester*, *Stratton*

2 **Introduction of Christianity** among the English, A.D 597 This period extends from A D 600 to 1000, and the character of the words is mainly ecclesiastical, *i e* relating to the church During the same time other words were brought in by literature and commerce

3 **Norman Influence,** A D 1066—1400, Latin introduced through the French Words of feudalism, law, hunting, war, and many others

4 **Revival of Letters,** the 16th century and first half of the 17th, or the period extending from the Tudors to the Commonwealth Words of all kinds

20 Before leaving this subject we must touch on a few other points of interest connected with the Latin element in our language

Though our language is the English language, it contains more words of Latin than of native origin In saying this we mean that, if we take a dictionary and count up the total number of words, we shall find that Latin has furnished us with more than we obtained from our English forefathers But then we do not *use* more Latin words than English words, although we have more of them This last sentence contains eighteen words Of these eighteen, only two are of Latin origin, the words *use* and *Latin* All the rest are native English Two in eighteen is a trifle over 11 per cent. By way of contrast let us examine a sentence taken at random from an essay of Matthew Arnold's

"All our good secondary schools have at present some examination proceeding from the universities, and if this kind of examination,

customary and admitted already, were generalised and regularised, it would be sufficient for the purpose"

Here we have thirty-five words, and thirteen of them come from the Latin source This gives 37 per cent of foreign origin as compared with eleven per cent in the former passage

One more sample, this time a verse of Wordsworth's

"Six feet in earth my Emma lay,
And yet I loved her more—
For so it seemed,—than till that day
I e'er had loved before"

These six-and-twenty words are all native English the Latin element is altogether absent

Now, how is it that the dictionary proportion of Latin words in English and the proportion in use are so different?

Because (1) in the dictionary every word counts once and only once *That, and, if,* count as one English word each, and *regularise, generalise, secondary,* count as one word each But we can hardly make a sentence without bringing in such words as *that, and, if,* whilst we may pass months or years or a life-time without bringing into our sentences such words as *regularise, generalise, secondary* We should find it a troublesome business to make a sentence ten words long without using a single native English word, for the English words are the mortar, so to speak, by which the sentence is bound together Take these words away, and the sentence tumbles to pieces Take away the classical words, and we can in most cases substitute for them words of English origin

Again, (2) by far the greater number of the words in the dictionary are words which we never use at all,—words which we should never meet with, unless we chanced to see them when we were looking in the dictionary How many words there are in the English language, it is not an easy matter to say Some persons would give 50,000 as the number, others 100,000, others 150,000 These startling discrepancies do not imply any incapacity to count correctly on the part of the people who furnish the estimates, they arise from a difference of opinion as to what constitutes a word Suppose we accept the middle estimate of the three totals mentioned above, and say that there are 100,000 words in our language, we might then roughly distribute them thus without any great error in the proportion Latin 60,000, English 30,000, Greek and other sources 10,000

But how many of these words are in ordinary use? To this question it is impossible to give a definite answer Shakespeare employed twice as many words to express his thoughts as anybody else, and he said all that he had to say with about 15,000 words. Milton needed only half that number An educated man of to day has a vocabulary of some five or six thousand words Two thousand suffice for an average mechanic, one thousand for a schoolboy, half that number for an

agricultural labourer We give these numbers by conjecture, but probably they are not very wide of the mark At any rate we may safely say this, that for every word which the best educated man makes use of, there are at least ten, perhaps twenty, in the dictionary, which he never uses at all And most of these are words of foreign extraction The question may be asked,—What are these words for, if we never use them? Vast numbers of them are words of what we call a technical character, they belong to different arts and crafts and sciences, and are used by the men who follow those arts and crafts and sciences and by nobody else Thus the doctor employs hundreds of technical words not used by the rest of us, then there are the words peculiar to botany and chemistry, the words of mining, of building, of seamanship, and so on Every occupation furnishes its contribution of terms which are as completely unknown to people generally as so many words of Winchester slang

But (3) even when we are dealing with words in ordinary use, words of which everybody knows the meaning, the more simple and familiar the subject in hand, the more does the English element predominate The words which denote the things nearest and dearest to us, the things which we have known from our childhood, are of English origin *Father* and *mother*, *house* and *home*, *rain*, *wind*, *day*, *night*, *sun*, *moon*,—these are English words And hence it is that Wordsworth, describing an old man's feeling about his daughter's death, naturally uses an unmixed English diction as best suited to his purpose How feeble a Latinized paraphrase would sound by the side of the simple English words which go home to our hearts!

"And yet I loved her more—
For so it seemed,—than till that day
I e'er had loved before"

"It appeared to me that I entertained an intenser affection for her than I had previously experienced" The force of the passage has gone, and the sentence reads as if it were taken from the pages of a third rate novelist On the other hand, the extract from Matthew Arnold abounds in Latin words, because he is dealing with a scientific subject and resorts to scientific language Our English forefathers knew nothing of 'regularising' and 'generalising,' of 'secondary schools' and 'universities' We should be puzzled to express the passage in words of English origin Thus the Latin element in a man's style will vary according to his subject If he is writing on a philosophical subject, the proportion of Latin words must necessarily be high, because English will not provide him with the vocabulary which he requires If he is writing a story or a poem about love or family life, the proportion of Latin words will be low, because English words will be more effective for his purpose But however high the proportion may be, we shall never come across a passage five lines long in which there are as many

Latin words as there are words of native origin When we say of a man that he writes a Latinised or classical style, we mean that he often prefers to use a Latin noun, verb, or adjective, when an English noun, verb, or adjective would express his meaning The other words in his sentences are for the most part English and must be English, since about these no choice is possible

It is sometimes said that we ought always to use an English word instead of a Latin word if we can But a hard and fast rule of this sort is not to be laid down for universal application as a maxim of style The Latin word may sometimes be the more effective or exact, though an English word might also serve the purpose A good writer will select the best word regardless of its derivation Still, half-educated persons have such a hankering after Latin words in preference to English words, for the expression of common-place notions about things of every-day life, that there is safety in laying down the rule, at any rate for them, that the English word should always be taken, and the Latin word should be left The habit of saying 'Allow me to assist you to potatoes,' instead of 'Let me help you to potatoes,' or 'Let me give you some potatoes', of using 'period' or 'epoch' instead of 'time', 'individual' instead of 'man', 'commence' instead of 'begin,' and so on, is détestable[1]

21 III Greek words in English. The Greek element in English is important, and its amount is rapidly increasing In date of introduction it corresponds with the Latin of the Fourth Period There are indeed a few ecclesiastical terms of Greek origin, which reached us through a Latin channel before the Norman Conquest, *e g deacon, monk, apostle, bishop, hymn* But with the exception of a score of words like these, belonging to the vocabulary of the Christian church, the Greek which we have in modern English has been adopted since the Revival of Learning for purposes of scientific nomenclature Greek is a language which lends itself readily to the formation of compounds So was old English, but this power of making new words by the combination of other words seems to have perished through the influence of the Norman French At any rate, our language possesses it no longer If we consider the ease with which long compound words can be formed in

[1] See Abbott and Seeley's *English Lessons*, p 105

modern German, it seems curious that our own Teutonic language should lack the same facility But such is the case And as compound terms are increasingly necessary to express the complex ideas of science, we fall back on Greek to supply our needs *Telephone*, *microscope*, *thermometer*, *photograph*, are examples of Greek compounds, and, if we translate these words into their English equivalents, the advantage which we gain from the use of Greek is apparent

22 IV **Scandinavian words in English** It is not always an easy matter to determine what words we owe to the Norsemen, as the Norsemen belonged to the Teutonic race, and their vocabulary resembled that of our own Low-German dialect Still, there are some words which we can identify as Scandinavian in their origin We may trace the Danes on the map of England by the ending *by*, which means 'town,' as in *Derby*, *Whitby* the same word is preserved in *bye law* This ending occurs for the most part in the district once occupied by the Danes, called the Danelagh, in the north and east of England. *Fell*, as in 'Scawfell,' *force*, 'a water-fall,' as in 'Stockgill force,' are other examples of Danish geographical names To the Danes we owe also the word *are*, which took the place of the English form of the 3rd person plural of the verb *am* Other additions which they made to our vocabulary are seen in the words *fellow*, *sky*, *scold*, *ugly* The common termination *-son* in names of persons, *e g* 'Johnson,' 'Anderson,' is Danish Words meaning 'son of,' Patronymics as they are called in grammar, were formed in Old English by the addition of the ending *ing*, *e g* 'Atheling'

23 V **Words from various sources** We have now completed our account of the chief sources from which the vocabulary of modern English has been enriched

Words have been borrowed from a large number of other languages, but no great advantage will be gained by burdening the memory with lists of terms for which various foreign countries have been placed under contribution. The student who is asked to mention a word which we have taken from the Turkish, or Indian, or Chinese, should think of something peculiar to Turkey, or India, or China, and examples will suggest themselves Thus *fez* or *odalisk* may occur to him as Turkish words, *curry*, *pundit*, *pariah* as Hindu, *junk* and *tea* as Chinese A few illustrations are added of common words borrowed from miscellaneous sources

Modern French—*bouquet*, *etiquette*, *programme*
Italian—*bandit*, *gazette*, *regatta*
Spanish—*armada*, *cigar*, *don*
Portuguese—*commodore*, *caste*, *marmalade*
Modern German—*waltz*, *meerschaum*, *nickel*
Dutch—*schooner*, *yacht*, *sloop*
Russian—*czar*, *knout*, *drosky*
Hebrew—*cherub*, *seraph*, *sabbath*
Arabic—*admiral*, *alcohol*, *zero*
Persian—*chess*, *lilac*, *orange*
Malay—*amuck* ('to run amuck'), *bantam*, *sago*
North-American—*squaw*, *tobacco*, *tomahawk*

QUESTIONS

1 These six Latin words occur in names of places and are marks of the Roman occupation of Britain —*castra*, 'a camp', *colonia*, 'a colony', *fossa*, 'a ditch', *portus*, 'a harbour', *strata*, 'a paved road', *vallum*, 'a rampart' Mention names in which these Latin words survive

2 The following Latin words furnish us with pairs of derivatives which came into our language (1) indirectly through the Norman-French, (2) directly at the Revival of Learning Give the pairs of derivatives —*fragilis*, *pœnitentia*, *securus*, *pauper*, *conceptio*

3 What other forms have we of the words *privy*, *royal*, *story*, *blame*? Which of the forms came into the language first? Why do you think so?

4 Pick out the words of Latin origin in the 19th Psalm

5 Mention the periods at which words of Latin origin were largely introduced into English Give instances of words introduced at each period

6 Give the words of English origin in common use which most nearly answer to the following —*expansion*, *construction*, *ridiculous*, *fortitude*, *depression*, *depart*, *transgression*, *elevation*, *probability*, *virtuous*

7 Of the elements composing the English vocabulary, which is (1) the largest, and (2) the oldest?

To what European dialects is English most nearly akin?

8 Assign to its proper language the italicised part of each of the following words —*Car*lisle, Don*caster*, Der*by*, Lin*coln*

9 How is it that so many rivers in England bear the name of *Avon*? In what forms does *Ex* appear in names of places?

[*Avon* is a Keltic word for 'river' and *Ex* for 'water' The name *Avon* or *Ex*, given by the British inhabitant to the river in his neighbourhood, would be preserved by the English settler Hence we have upwards of a dozen rivers called 'Avon' in England, and 'Ex' in various disguises is even more common *e g* *Ex* eter, *Ax* minster, perhaps *Ox*-ford, *Ux* bridge, *Usk*, *Esk*, *Ouse* See Meiklejohn's *English Language*, p 205]

10 Rewrite the following passage, substituting words of English origin for those derived from Latin —

'The old man trusts wholly to slow contrivance and gradual progression The youth expects to force his way by genius, vigour, and precipitance The old man deifies prudence The youth commits himself to magnanimity and chance Age looks with anger on the temerity of youth, and youth with contempt on the scrupulosity of age'

Johnson

CHAPTER III

The Indo European or Aryan Family of Languages

24. When we are learning Greek or Latin, French or German, we come across some words that are the same in form as their English equivalents and many more words that are very like them Take the English words *one, three, me, is* Everybody can see the resemblance of these words to the French *un, trois, me, est*, to the Latin *unus, tres, me, est*, to the German *ein, drei, mich, ist*, to the Greek ἕν, τρεῖς, με, ἐστί A knowledge of other languages of Europe would enable us to carry the comparison further with the certainty of finding in them corresponding resemblances From the fact that these similarities exist we are not to draw the inference that our English ancestors derived the word *me* from the Latin, or that the Romans derived their word *me* from the Greek We did not wait for the Romans to supply us with a necessary word like *me*, nor were the Romans without it until they took it from the Greeks With regard to the French words *un, trois, me, est*, the case is different, they do 'come from' the Latin *unus, tres, me, est*, for the Romans conquered Gaul, and the Gauls adopted in the main the language of their conquerors But *me* was good English before the Normans came to England Such words as *secure, convict, hospital, detect*, have really 'come from' the Latin we borrowed them directly But it would be a great mistake to suppose that wherever we find a

likeness between words in two languages, there has been any borrowing at all, direct or indirect

Now resemblances such as we see between words like *one, three, me, is,* in a number of different languages, are too many for them to be the result of chance If then the similar words in one language have not been taken from those in another, how are we to account for the similarity?

25 The explanation is this, that **the various languages have proceeded from a common source** Suppose that many of the nations of Europe and Asia are descended from a tribe which existed some thousands of years ago Suppose that, as this tribe increased in numbers, it became a difficult matter to supply the growing population with food We know what happens in our own time and country when men find a difficulty about getting a livelihood in the place of their birth They go somewhere else Sometimes they move from the country districts and settle in the large towns Sometimes they leave the old country and seek their fortunes in a new one The men who cut themselves adrift from their old moorings are, as a rule, the younger, more vigorous, and more enterprising members of the community The old folk stay on at home In much the same fashion we may imagine that this primitive nation witnessed long ago the exodus of many of the more hardy and energetic of its members With their tents and their cattle, these younger men would wander away from the family settlement, until they found a district which seemed attractive as a permanent resting-place, a district with a river at hand and pasture for the herds And here the descendants of these emigrants would remain until in their case was repeated the history of what had happened to their forefathers The pressure of an increasing population would make a fresh migration necessary, and a part of the tribe would again set out to found a new settlement Suppose

that, three or four thousand years later, a traveller came upon the descendants of the original tribe, scattered abroad through Europe and Persia and India, he would find that, in spite of the changes which removals and the lapse of many centuries had brought about in their languages, these languages contained beneath the surface many points of resemblance

Now this supposition that from an early race of men there started forth, at different times, parties of emigrants from whom have sprung a posterity which occupies a portion of Asia and almost the whole of Europe, is a supposition only Historical records on the subject we have none We cannot therefore speak of these migrations with the same certainty which we feel when we speak of the English coming from Schleswig-Holstein, or of the Normans coming from France In proof of these invasions of Saxons and Normans we can produce written testimony The migrations of our supposed primitive tribe are matters of inference, but the inference is one which we feel justified in drawing, because it enables us to **explain the existence of these similarities** between many of the languages of Europe and Asia.

A comparison of most of the languages of Europe with many of the languages of India discloses to us the fact that, instead of being totally different, they present many points of resemblance,—so many indeed that we are driven to the conclusion that these languages have **proceeded from a common source.** This collection of languages we call the **Indo-European** or **Aryan Family** of Languages

26 It is believed that three or four thousand years ago there lived, somewhere between the Hindu-Kush mountains and the Caspian Sea, a tribe, or tribes of the same race, called **Aryans** Though we have no written memorials of these Aryans, the habits and character of the people are

known to us as inferences from facts revealed by philological research Experts in the Science of Language tell us that these Aryans lived in towns, kept cattle, ploughed the ground, used metals, made boats, could count up to a hundred, recognised family relations, and had various names for God And the line of argument by which they establish these conclusions is of this kind —If, say they, we find existing in various disguises, in a number of different languages, the same word to express 'horse,' 'sheep,' 'plough,' 'spear,' then the tribe from which these modern races have sprung must have had a word for horse, sheep, plough, spear, and if they had the word, they must have been acquainted with the thing Language comes to our help again in fixing the original abode of the primitive Aryan tribe If we find Aryan names for certain plants and animals, we infer that the Aryans had their home in a district where these plants and animals would flourish Other reasons there are for placing the Aryans where the majority of the authorities on the question have agreed to place them, but this is one reason, and it shows us once more how language throws a light upon history, or even reveals to us history which is otherwise hidden[1]

27 Of these Aryan languages some are more closely allied than others The more closely allied languages we arrange in classes which we call **Stocks** Then again we subdivide a stock into classes of still more closely allied languages, and these subdivisions we call **Branches** Let us treat our own language in this fashion In the first place, it belongs to the **Teutonic** stock But many other languages belong to this stock, some of which resemble English more closely than others Dutch, Flemish, German, Icelandic, Norwegian, Swedish, Danish, are all of them Teutonic

[1] See Max Muller's *Lectures on the Science of Language*, 1st series, pp 238–9, and Sayce's *Introduction to the Science of Language*, II pp 121—134

languages, but they fall into different groups English we said was a **Low-German** language so is Dutch, so is Flemish It was pointed out that 'Low' and 'High' are geographical terms, signifying that the people of whom they are used lived on the lowlands near the coast, or on the higher ground of the interior Modern German is a High-German language Then again the languages of Iceland, Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, form a third group, which we call Scandinavian The Teutonic stock is thus subdivided into three branches, viz Low-German, High-German, and Scandinavian, and it is a full designation of the **English language** to say that it is a member of the **Low-German branch** of the **Teutonic stock** of the **Indo-European or Aryan family** of languages We might describe Dutch and Flemish as sister languages of English, and German and Norwegian as its first-cousins

Another stock of considerable interest to us is the **Romanic**, or **Italic**, since to this stock belong the Latin, from which we have borrowed largely, and the modern representatives of the Latin,—Italian, French, Spanish,—Romance languages as they are called, *Romance* because they come from a Roman source Then again there is the **Hellenic** or **Grecian** stock, which is represented by the Modern Greek

The **Keltic** stock also has peculiar interest for us, because the inhabitants of our island before the arrival of our English forefathers were Kelts, and Keltic dialects are spoken at the present day in parts of Great Britain and Ireland The Keltic stock falls into two branches, the Cymric and the Gaelic Under the former head are placed the Welsh language and the Armorican, a dialect spoken in Brittany The old Cornish, which died out two centuries ago, belonged to the same branch In the Gaelic group are included the native Irish or Erse, the Scotch Gaelic of the Highlands, and the Manx of the Isle of Man

28 The language brought to this island in the fifth and sixth centuries by our English forefathers was a pure or unmixed Teutonic speech An unmixed language in the main it long continued to be Contributions of words from foreign sources came in slowly at first On the other hand, although **Modern English** is in its essentials a **Teutonic** language, it contains a large **Italic** element, has received considerable additions to its vocabulary from the **Hellenic** source, and possesses a slight **Keltic** ingredient Thus four different stocks have contributed to its formation it is a **mixed** or **composite** language its words have been borrowed from many different sources

29 Two groups of European languages remain to complete the list of stocks into which the European members of the Aryan family are divided. these are the **Slavonic**, of which Russian is an important example, and **Lettish**, which is represented at the present time by dialects in Eastern Prussia

As the name *Indo-European* implies, some of the languages of Asia belong to this family These languages fall into two groups One group is the **Indian**, which includes Sanskrit, a dead language with an important literature, the modern dialects of India which are sprung from Sanskrit, such as Hindustani, Bengali, and others, and Cingalese, the dialect of Ceylon The other group is the **Iranian** or Persian

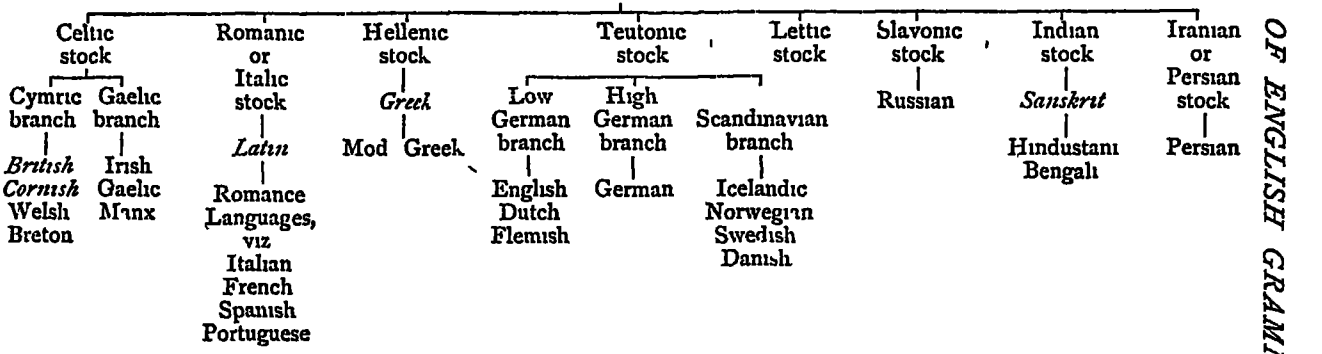
There are thus eight stocks into which the Aryan or Indo-European family is subdivided, two of them Indian and six European It must not be supposed from the use of the word 'Indo-European' that *all* the languages of India and *all* the languages of Europe belong to the same family The languages of India we will not discuss in further detail, but it must be borne in mind that **the following European languages are not members of this great family** —Turkish, Hungarian, the language of the Laps

in Lapland, the language of the Fins in Finland, and the Basque, spoken in the Pyrenees

30 Of the other families of languages, the **Semitic** is the most important To it belongs Hebrew, in which the greater part of the Old Testament is written, and it contains also Arabic. Besides the Aryan and the Semitic Family, other distinct groups of languages spoken in various parts of the world have been recognised, *e g* the languages of China, of Farther India, of Japan, of South America Many languages have not yet been studied with the view of tracing their relationships

31 The Table on the next page shows the relationship of some of the principal members of the Indo-European or Aryan Family of Languages The names of dead languages and dead dialects are printed in italics

TABLE OF SOME OF THE LANGUAGES BELONGING TO THE INDO-EUROPEAN OR ARYAN FAMILY



CHAPTER IV.

The Divisions of Grammar

32 In the preceding chapters we have sketched the gradual process by which was formed the English language as we have it now, we have marked those events in the history of our island which produced important effects upon our language, and we have shown the relationship of English to other members of the same family of languages We have ascertained what the English language is, where it came from, when it arrived. We now pass on to treat of the grammar of the English language, and first let us inquire **what we mean by Grammar**

33 We can speak a language, or we can write a language, or we can both speak and write a language All languages were spoken before they were written Some languages spoken by uncivilized tribes in Africa are not written yet. At the present day Latin and ancient Greek are written but not spoken For this reason we call them dead languages English, French, and German are spoken and written Now it is clear that there must be a right way and a wrong way of writing and speaking these languages **To deal with the correct way of writing and speaking them is part of the business of Grammar** An African savage knows nothing of grammar, but he knows that the missionary does not speak his language properly In time the missionary may come to know the language as thoroughly

as the natives know it, and may state a number of rules and principles concerning the use of the language,—rules and principles to which the natives conform in their daily speech, without having ever heard of the existence of such rules and principles These rules and principles constitute an important part of the grammar of the language But we need not travel so far away as Africa for an illustration Take the case of an English child, brought up in an educated family At an early age such a child would speak good English though he had never learnt grammar, perhaps had never even heard of the subject On the other hand, a child brought up in an ignorant household would speak bad English, would make mistakes in pronunciation or use wrong forms of expression Without any grammatical training in either case, these children would speak correctly or incorrectly, would pick up good English or bad English, through the influence of the people with whom they came in contact So it is hardly a true account of the matter, at any rate so far as one's own language is concerned, to say, as is sometimes said, that grammar *teaches* us to speak and write correctly We learn to speak and write correctly by mixing with educated persons and reading well-written books What grammar does is this it **treats of the language** generally, its sounds, letters and words, it supplies us with a number of **rules for the correct way of using the language**, and it examines **why** certain ways of using the language are right, and certain others are wrong, not merely stating **rules**, but adding **reasons** Thus, suppose a person says 'Ask him to let you and I go out', we see that the grammar is bad, and if we alter the sentence to Ask him to let you and me go out,' we make the necessary grammatical correction But if we go on to add that *let* is a transitive verb and requires an objective case after it, we give a reason for altering *I* to *me* We state not merely that one form of expression is wrong and the other right but

why one is wrong and the other right We give a principle as well as a rule

34. Some writers on grammar have described it as an Art and others as a Science An Art consists of a collection of rules, with more or less practical skill to carry them out A Science consists of the principles on which the Art is based Now a man may be a successful artist in many subjects without understanding the principles which underlie his Art He may have the knack of playing a tune on the piano after he has heard it whistled in the street, though he may be unable to read music from the printed page Or he may be able to paint a landscape, though he knows nothing of the principles of perspective And in like manner he may speak and write excellent English, though he has never been taught a line of grammar But he would certainly be more likely to avoid mistakes as a musician, if he had learnt the principles of harmony, or as a painter, if he had learnt the principles of perspective, or as a writer and speaker, if he had learnt the principles of grammar So even from the point of view of practical utility, we may fairly say that grammar deserves to be studied A knowledge of grammar will not indeed make a man a *good* writer, in the sense of furnishing him with a pleasant or striking style, but it will help to make him a *correct* writer, and many of our masters of English style would have written better, if they had paid more attention to grammatical rules If therefore anybody is disposed to say that learning grammar is a waste of time, because it is quite possible to speak and write correctly without a knowledge of it, we may fairly reply that a knowledge of grammar is of some use even as a safeguard against speaking and writing wrongly, things which we are all of us apt to do But this is not the chief reason after all for studying grammar We study many subjects of which it would be difficult to say precisely what is the 'good,' unless we were satisfied that the knowledge of the subject is a *good in itself* It is a knowledge of such subjects which constitutes a liberal as distinct from a commercial education We may study chemistry simply because it is interesting to know something of the constituents of the world around us, not because we intend to become chemical manufacturers We may study animal physiology simply because it is interesting to know something of the structure of our own bodies and of the bodies of other animals We have been breathing and digesting all our lives, and we shall breathe no better for knowing the composition of the atmosphere, and digest no better when we have learnt the nature of the gastric juice, than we breathed and digested before we acquired this information But we do not feel that the time given to chemistry or physiology has therefore been wasted An intelligent man likes to understand the things which he sees around him These things are too numerous for us to understand much of many of them We must pick and choose

according to our tastes But a man who knows nothing but what is of 'use' to him, in the sense of its providing him with the means of getting his living, is likely to be a dull fellow, uninteresting to himself and to his neighbours Now to English speaking people the English language ought to be an attractive subject of study When we think of the series of great writers who have used this language,—of Chaucer, Shakespeare, Milton, Wordsworth, Tennyson,—when we reflect how this language is spoken to day by many millions of people besides the inhabitants of our own little island,—by the people of the United States and Canada, of Australia and South Africa,—so that it bids fair to become the universal medium of intercourse among the chief commercial nations of the world, we can hardly fail to realise that our English tongue well deserves our attention, and that we ought not to rest satisfied with merely using it correctly, but that we should give some time and trouble to gaining information about its history and character And some of this information a book on English grammar will give

35 Grammar, then, has to do with **language**, and **language is made up of words** A language, as we saw, may be spoken, or written, or both Spoken words are sounds which may be pronounced rightly or wrongly, as a short experience shows us when we are learning French or German One part of Grammar deals with the **correct pronunciation of words**, and is called **Orthoepy** But under this head we shall treat of a good deal besides the right pronunciation of words We shall inquire what is the total number of elementary sounds which our English vocabulary with its 100,000 words contains We shall classify these sounds We shall touch upon some of the tendencies to substitute one sound for another and look for an explanation of these tendencies That branch of the subject which has to do with topics of this sort is sometimes called **Phonology**, or the **theory of spoken sounds**

36 Then again, words may be **written** as well as **spoken**, and they may be **written rightly or wrongly** The branch of grammar which deals with the **correct writing or spelling of words** is called **Orthography** We write, or spell, with letters, so orthography deals with the alphabet.

37. If we are asked,—Are Orthography and Orthoepy essential or necessary parts of Grammar? we may answer in this way If a language is spoken but not written, as is the case with the languages of savage tribes, its grammar will contain Orthoepy but not Orthography If a language is a dead language,—if it is written but no longer spoken,—its grammar will contain Orthography, but its Orthoepy will be uncertain or impossible But either Orthography or Orthoepy a grammar must contain, for a language must be either written or spoken, if we know it at all

38 After examining the sounds and signs, or letters, of which spoken or written words are composed, we shall pass on to consider words themselves We shall show that the words contained in the vocabulary of our language may be arranged in classes according to their meaning, as nouns, verbs, prepositions, etc. Then we shall inquire what changes of form, or inflexions, any of these words undergo, and what is the effect of these changes on the meaning of the words We might also push our investigation further, and discuss the relation of English words to words in other languages, and determine the channel through which they passed into our own As an example of these different operations, take the word *mother* Of this word as it stands by itself, we can say that it is a noun, in the singular number, that it makes a possessive case singular *mother's*, and a plural number *mothers*, that compounds can be formed from it such as *mother-country*, and derivatives such as *motherly*, that it is connected with, though not borrowed from, the Latin *mater*, Greek μήτηρ, German *mutter*, and so forth Now that part of grammar in which we treat of words taken separately, classifying them and considering their origin and form, is called Etymology, and a very important part of the subject it is

39 But when we speak or write, it is rarely the case that words stand alone in this fashion It is true that sometimes

they occur thus for example, we may say 'Mother!' as an exclamation, or if we are asked 'Who gave you that book?' we may answer, 'Mother,' which is a short way of saying 'Mother gave it me,' or 'Mother did.' But usually words occur in sentences, and then we can describe what is the relation in which each word in the sentence stands to the rest The part of grammar which **treats of words** when they are regarded **in their relation to other words**,—of words when they form parts of groups of other words,—is called **Syntax** So far as Grammar is studied as an Art,—as a subject of practical usefulness to prevent us from making mistakes in speaking or writing,—Syntax is the more important department. But in so far as we study grammar in the spirit of scientific curiosity, for the sake of learning something about our English tongue, Syntax is of no more importance than Etymology In the following pages however no attempt has been made to keep the treatment of Etymology rigorously distinct from that of Syntax For in discussing the forms of words it is often an advantage to deal with their uses when they are related to other words

40 When we have dealt with the sounds of our speech, the signs or letters which represent them, the words taken separately, and words arranged in sentences, our treatment of the subject will be finished Recognition is indeed frequently given to another department of Grammar, called Prosody The aspect of this word must not mislead the reader into thinking that Prosody has to do with prose, for prose is just what Prosody does not deal with Prosody has to do with Verse, with compositions in metre Now it is clear that Prosody is not an essential department of grammar, for there might well be a language in which there were no compositions in verse, no metre, and therefore no Prosody As a fact there is probably no language without metrical compositions of some sort, such as hymns to the gods or chants before going into battle, and if there is metre, then there are principles which regulate the employment of the metre, and these principles constitute Prosody But there is no necessity for the existence of metrical compositions in every language. Most of us pass our lives and express ourselves only in prose We may conceive that an entire nation expressed itself only in prose, and had never expressed itself in anything else

But as soon as a language presents us with compositions in metre, Prosody becomes possible And most languages do contain compositions in metre amongst their oldest literary possessions This is naturally the case, since verse is easier to recollect than prose, and is often better worth recollecting Consequently, in an early age verse is handed down, while prose perishes

The common blunder must be avoided of supposing that rhyme is the same thing as verse, or that poetry is the same thing as either Verse is the name applied to the arrangement of words in metre In modern English verse, this arrangement is such as to allow the accent, or stress of the voice, to fall at regular intervals, like the beats in music This regular recurrence of accented and unaccented syllables is called rhythm

A study of metres helps us to appreciate and enjoy the skill which our poets have shown in devising varied and appropriate measures for their verse. But the adequate discussion of this subject would occupy too much space in our book Moreover, as grammarians we are concerned not with the effective use of language but with its correct use Questions of style are appropriate to treatises on Composition or Rhetoric rather than to a treatise on Grammar, and the metrical arrangement of words is a matter of style

41 It will be convenient if we bring together the chief results which we have reached in this chapter

Grammar has sometimes been described as the Art of speaking and writing correctly But people may possess the Art of correctly using their own language without having any knowledge of grammar We define it therefore as the **Science which treats of words and their correct use**

It contains the following departments,—Orthoepy, Orthography, Etymology, and Syntax

Orthoepy deals with the correct pronunciation of words.

Orthography deals with the correct spelling or writing of words

Etymology deals with the classification of words, their derivation and inflexion

Syntax deals with the combination of words in sentences, their government, agreement, and order.

CHAPTER V

Elementary Sounds in English

42 We have assumed that the English dictionary contains 100,000 different significant sounds or words, five or six thousand of which are in use as the vocabulary of the average well-educated man These different sounds are composed of a very limited number of **simple** or **elementary** sounds Just as chemistry teaches us that out of sixty-three elements are formed the boundless varieties of substances, which nature and man's art present to us, so an examination of the sounds which we utter in pronouncing English words shows us that they are made by combining about forty sounds which are simple or elementary Take, for example, the words *bat* and *but* Each word contains three simple sounds in combination, but two of the simple sounds, *b* and *t*, are the same in each

43 **Vowels and Consonants** Our first business will be to ascertain the **different sorts of sounds** which we make in speaking The division of letters, which serve as the signs or symbols of sounds, into **vowels** and **consonants**, is known to everybody Let us carefully inquire into the nature of the distinction between these sounds

Open your mouth and let the breath pass out unchecked while you utter the sound of *a* in *path*, or of *e* in *feed*, or of

o in *note* The sound can be continued until you are out of breath Now pronounce the letter *b* in *bad*, not calling it *bee*,—'*bee*' is merely its name as a letter of the alphabet Pronounce it as if you intended to say *bad*, but changed your mind and stopped as soon as the first letter had escaped The sound is an instantaneous one There is a sudden explosion of the *b*', and to prolong it is impossible Why? Because the sound is made by closing the lips and tearing them rapidly apart Observe how a man who stammers pronounces the word *bad* He does not prolong the sound of *b*,—he could not prolong it,—but he repeats it, closing and separating his lips until at length he gets the word out Again, take the sounds *d* and *t*, pronouncing them as we should do, if we started saying words of which they form the first letter and stopped as soon as we had got the first letter out Begin to say *dog*, or *ten*, and check yourself at the end of the *d*' or *t*'. No amount of effort will enable you to continue the sound uninterruptedly

Shall we say then that vowels are sounds which we can prolong indefinitely, in other words, which we can keep on making without a break, and consonants are sounds which come to an end instantaneously? Further experiments will show that this ground of distinction fails Take the sounds represented by *f*, *v*, *s*, *sh*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* Like the vowel sounds, these sounds can be prolonged while the breath holds out. The distinction between vowels and consonants consists rather in this A vowel is a sound by the aid of which we can pronounce any other sound at the ordinary pitch of the voice A consonant is a sound by the aid of which we cannot pronounce any other sound at the ordinary pitch of the voice Pronounce once more the sounds *p*', *b*', *t*', *d*', without any accompanying vowel The parting of the lips in *p*' and *b*' is just audible so is the click of the tongue against the teeth in *t*' and *d*' We cannot say that absolutely no sound is produced If we practised

these experiments in a company of silent people, we should make noise enough to attract attention But the sounds would not be uttered at the ordinary pitch of the voice Conversation across the table in these tones would be inaudible, and a speech in so low a key to a public meeting would be no better than dumb show Add a vowel to these silent letters however, say *pay, be, toe, daw,* and you can make yourself heard a hundred yards away But let us try the combination of *p, b, t, d,* with those other consonants which we saw could be uttered by themselves, *f, v, s, sh, l, m, n, r* If we place together *pr, bn, tl, dz,* we shall not find that we have obtained a combination which can be pronounced at the natural pitch of the voice Instead of saying, therefore, that vowels are sounds which can be uttered alone, and consonants are sounds which can be uttered only by the aid of a vowel, let us put the matter thus

Vowels are sounds by the aid of which any consonantal sound can be audibly produced.

Consonants are sounds which will not enable us to produce audibly sounds which are by themselves almost inaudible.

44 This account of the difference between vowels and consonants does not agree with the account which is usually given It is commonly said that vowels are sounds which can be produced alone, and that consonants are sounds which can be produced only by the aid of a vowel But though this statement of the matter suits the derivation of the words, —for *vowel* comes from *vocalis*, which means 'capable of being sounded,' and *consonant* comes from *cum*, 'together,' and *sonans*, 'sounding,' *i e* 'what is sounded along with something else,'—it does not seem to suit the facts of the case If a public speaker incurs the hostility of his audience, the *ssss* of their disapproval can be heard very well without the addition of any vowel to aid its pronunciation The *sh* ' with which ill mannered people are rebuked for chattering at a concert, the *mmm?* with which we express our hesitation when an acquaintance makes a statement or a proposal which does not commend itself to our favour, are consonantal sounds which are audible enough when they stand alone

Then again it is sometimes said that vowels are open sounds and

consonants closer and less musical sounds, but this distinction does not seem to throw much light on the subject Or we are told that vowels are formed without the stoppage of the breath, and that consonants are formed by stopping or by squeezing the breath All this is interesting, no doubt, to us as physiologists, but it is no concern of ours as grammarians whether we stop our breath or only squeeze it, whether we vibrate our vocal chords or do something with our larynx or pharynx This is physiology, not grammar Our business is to distinguish the sounds when produced, not to determine the mode of their production

45 **Classification of Consonantal Sounds.** Let us now take the consonantal sounds and consider some broad distinctions between them Compare the four sounds of *d'*, *t'*, *dh'*, *th'*, as represented in the words *din*, *tin*, *thine*, *thin*, remembering, as before, to make these sounds by beginning to utter the words and stopping short before the vowel is reached Now in these four sounds, there are two important distinctions to be noticed

46 **Sonants and Surds.** (1) In the first place, if we compare *d'* with *t'* and *dh'* with *th'*, we shall observe that although the *d'* and *dh'* are not audible at the ordinary pitch of the voice, still they can be just heard, if an effort is made, while the *t'* and *th'* are scarcely to be heard at all The same contrast may be noticed in other pairs of sounds *g'*, if pronounced when isolated from its vowel, is audible, *k'* is less so The sound of *j'* in *jest* is audible when it stands alone, *ch'* in *chest* is less so The sound of *b'* is just audible, *p'* is almost silent Various names have been used to express this distinction Some writers call one set of sounds **Hard** and the other **Soft**, others call one set **Sharp** and the other **Flat** Let us compare once more *b'* and *p'* and ask ourselves which is hard and which is soft, which is sharp and which is flat. If it strikes us that the application of these metaphors is obvious,—if these terms at once convey their appropriate meaning to our minds,—by all means let us continue to make use of them Possibly however we may not be struck by the suitability of the

epithets, and in that case the old words **Sonant** and **Surd** will express the difference more plainly for us **Sonant** means **sounding, surd** means **noiseless** Supposing that we fail to see the fitness of calling *p* hard or sharp and *b* soft or flat, we can see the fitness of calling *p* surd and *b* sonant, for we have only to pronounce both letters and observe which of the two we can hear most of By continuing the experiment, we can distribute all the sonants and surds in their right classes, and this is a much better plan than learning the lists by heart and then putting the wrong names at the top If we pronounce *g, j, d, b, dh, z, zh, v,* without an accompanying vowel, we can hear them These we call **sonants** If we pronounce their correlatives *k, ch, t, p, th, s, sh, f,* without a vowel, they are almost inaudible These we call **surds**

To make this distinction clear, we will give these pairs of sounds in two columns with a word to illustrate each They are variously distinguished as—

Sonants, Flat, Soft, Voiced		Surds, Sharp, Hard, Breathed	
g,	gat, gate	*k,*	cat, Kate
d,	do	*t,*	to
b,	bin	*p,*	pin
j,	jest	*ch,*	chest
dh,	thine	*th,*	thin
z,	maze	*s,*	mace
zh,	azure, pleasure	*sh,*	shine, sure
v,	vat	*f,*	fat
—	(wanting)	*h,*	hat

Now let us return to our four sounds *d, t, dh, th,* and observe what other distinction can be drawn between them, besides the distinction of sonant and surd

47 Mutes and Spirants. (2) The sounds *d* and *t* are sudden, abrupt, instantaneous, explosive it is impossible

to prolong them The sounds *dh*, *th* (as in *thine* and *thin*, for we often make the sound of *dh*, though we never use this sign for it) are continuous · they can be prolonged if we keep on breathing Hence they are called **Spirants**, (from the Latin *spiro*, 'I breathe.') Such letters as *d*, *t*, *p*, *b*, *g*, *k*, are called **Mutes**, because the sounds are silenced with a sudden halt From the same circumstance they are also called **Checks**, or **Explosives** Grammarians have exercised much ingenuity in finding a variety of terms to express the same distinction, thereby rendering the matter more difficult than it naturally is

We will now make a second list of consonantal sounds, classified according as they are Mutes or Spirants

Mutes, Checks, Stops, Explosives	Spirants, Breaths, Continuous
g, *k*, *d*, *t*, *b*, *p*, *j*, *ch*	*v*, *f*, *zh*, *sh*, *z*, *s*, *dh*, *th*, *h*

48 The sounds *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *ng* (as in *sing*) are called **Liquids**, or 'flowing' sounds

A few other terms are applied to differences in the classification of consonantal sounds The letters *l* and *r* are called **Trills**, because there is a vibration in the sounds, or in some part of the vocal apparatus by which we pronounce them Roll out an *r* as a Frenchman does, *rrr*, and this will be recognised at once.

Sibilants are hissing sounds They can be picked out easily from among the spirants, they are *s*, *z*, *sh*, *zh*

49 *Classification of Consonantal Sounds according to Vocal Organs* These consonantal sounds may be classified on quite a different method Hitherto we have dealt with them according to their characteristic differences as sounds But it is customary also to arrange them according to the part of the vocal organism chiefly concerned in their production Consider the various parts of the apparatus by which sounds are produced These are lips, teeth, tongue, roof of the mouth, throat, and nose, and from the Latin equivalents of these names we form adjectives and speak of *labials*, or lip-letters, *dentals*, or teeth letters, *linguals*, or tongue letters, *palatals*, or roof of the mouth letters, *gutturals*, or throat-letters, and *nasals*, or nose-letters To physiologists

this classification is of more importance than it is to grammarians, but it is a matter of some interest to observe how the different vocal organs are brought into play in varying degrees in the pronunciation of different sounds We must not expect to find some sounds made entirely by one organ and other sounds made entirely by another,—some all tongue and others all teeth Tongue and teeth may frequently combine in such a fashion as to render it difficult to say whether the sounds are to be put down as linguals or as dentals. However, some sort of rough classification may be made on this physiological principle. An indication of it is given here, not with the object that the student shall learn it by heart, but in order that he may test each sound under its proper heading for himself, and observe how the organ of the voice from which it derives its class name is brought into play in its production

Lip letters, Labials .	p, b, f, v
Teeth-letters, Dentals	t, d, th, dh
Tongue letters, Linguals . .	l, r
Roof of mouth letters, Palatals .	j, ch
Throat-letters, Gutturals .	g, k, h
Nose letters, Nasals	m, n, ng

50 Besides vowels and consonants there are two classes of sounds called **semi-vowels** and **diphthongs**

Semi-vowels These are *w* and *y* Pronounce a word beginning with a *w* followed by a vowel, such as *wit* or *wet*, and let the voice dwell upon the *w* In the sound given to the *w* you may detect a close resemblance to the vowel-sound of *oo* in *cool* or of *u* in *rude* Try the pronunciation slowly of *oo it*, *oo-et*, then increase the speed as you repeat the word, and you will find that you are saying *wit*, *wet* Again, take a word beginning with a *y*, such as *yes*, pronounce it slowly, and you will recognise in the sound of its first letter the long *e* sound of *feed* If we listen carefully to a person who gives us a hesitating 'yes' in reply to a question, we shall hear that he says *ee-es* In such cases as these, when *w* and *y* stand at the beginning of words, the vowel sound glides into a closely allied consonantal sound When *w* and *y* occur after other vowels, they help sometimes to represent pure vowel sounds, as in *draw*, *dray*, and sometimes to express diphthongs, as in

how, buy, that is to say, a pure vowel-sound or a diphthongal sound is given to the combination, but the *w* and *y* have contributed nothing as sounds to the result The *w* is not sounded in *draw* nor the *y* in *dray* these letters merely indicate which of the sounds of the over-worked vowel sign *a* is intended in each case The sound of *ow* in *how* is a blend, not of *o* + *w*, but of *o* + *u*, as in *house* the sound of *uy* in *buy* is no blend of *u* + *y* or of anything resembling these vowels, it is the same sound as the sound of *i* in *bind*, a blend of the *a* in *father* with the *i* in *pin* It must be borne in mind throughout this chapter that it is the sounds in English which we are classifying and not the signs or letters sounds which are identical with other sounds are not to be regarded as distinct because they happen to be represented by entirely different signs

51 **Diphthongs are blends or combinations of two vowel-sounds** which are run together in pronunciation At this point great care is needed not to be misled by the **diphthongs of print**, *æ*, *œ*, neither of which, in our English pronunciation, is a **true diphthong** at all The *æ* of *Cæsar* is no diphthong in sound, it is the pure vowel long *e* So is the *æ* in *fætid* The *ai* in *fair*, *ea* in *lead*, *ie* in *field*, *ei* in *receive*, are none of them true diphthongs, they are only more or less clumsy ways of showing the length of an elementary vowel-sound The **true diphthongs** in English, those in which two vowel-sounds are run into one, are **four**, or perhaps **five**, in number, viz

i in *fine* = *a* (in *father*) + *i* (in *pin*),
oi in *noise* = *a* (in *fall*) + *e* (in *feed*),
ou in *house* = *a* (in *father*) + *u* (in *put*),
u in *mute* = *i* (in *pin*) + *oo* (in *cool*)

These are true blends, and to them is sometimes added as a fifth the broader form of *i* in *fine*, viz the *i* of *aye*, when

it is said 'The Ayes have it' In a drawling pronunciation it is possible to detect the elementary vowel-sounds which form the diphthongal blend An imperfectly educated person will say 'What a bee-utiful na-ice ha-use!' in such a way that we can actually recognise the component parts of the diphthongs as they tumble to pieces It should be specially observed that though the *i* in *pine* is a single letter, it is diphthongal in sound, and the same is true of the *u* in *mute* Most of these diphthongal sounds can be represented in other ways Thus *oi* is expressed by *oy* in *boy*, by *uoy* in *buoy* *Ow* is frequently used instead of *ou* *Ew* (*few*), *ui* (*suit*), *ue* (*hue*), *eau* (*beauty*) are various ways of representing the diphthongal *u*

52 The enumeration of the different kinds of sounds which we make in pronouncing English words is now complete We will close this chapter with a classified list of those sounds which are simple or elementary, *i e* which cannot be resolved into component parts

I **Vowels** Of these we have in English fifteen, though there are only five letters with which to represent them The following words illustrate the pure elementary vowel-sounds in English

Six *a* sounds *fat, fate, father, fall, fare, want*
Two *e* sounds *fed, feed*
One *i* sound *pin*
Two *o* sounds *not, note*
Four *u* sounds *but, pull, fur, fool*

II **Consonants**

1	Mutes or Explosives	*g, k, d, t, b, p*
2	Spirants or Continuous	*h, z, s, zh, sh, dh, th, v, f*
3	Liquids	*l, m, n, r, ng*

A reference to the list of Sonants and Surds on p 40, or to the list of Mutes and Spirants on p 41, will show that

we have there enumerated seventeen sounds, while here, under the two heads of Mutes and Spirants, we have enumerated only fifteen The reason for the discrepancy is this We are now enumerating only the simple or elementary sounds, and *ch* and *j* must be rejected from the list as compounds *Ch*, pronounced as in *church*, $= t + sh$, *tshurtsh*, and *j*, as in *jest*, $= d + zh$, *dzhest* The objection may be urged that we have inserted in our list of simple sounds other sounds represented by two letters, *zh* in *azure*, *sh* in *shine*, *dh* in *thine*, *th* in *thin* But in reply we must say once again that we are discussing sounds and not our way of writing them The sound of *z* in *azure* is different from the sound of *z* in *zebra* To mark that difference we have written it *zh*, but it is not a compound of $z + h$, it is really an elementary sound The same remark is true of the *sh* in *shine* We have no single letter or symbol to express it, but we ought to have such a symbol, for the sound is elementary The sounds of *dh* in *thine* and of *th* in *thin* are different, but they are both of them elementary they are not compounds of $d + h$ and of $t + h$, we need a separate letter for each, but we do not possess such a letter for either

III Semi-vowels The letters *w* and *y*, when a vowel comes immediately after them in the same syllable, represent sounds which are almost consonantal

IV Diphthongs We saw that a diphthong was a blend or combination of two simple vowel-sounds which run into one. Now it seems a curious thing that grammarians, setting out to give a list of the simple or elementary sounds in the language, should include in their list diphthongal sounds which they tell us are compounds or mixtures We should be surprised, if a writer on chemistry added to his enumeration of elementary substances air,

water, earth, and coal-gas We should raise the objection that these can be broken up into constituent parts, and that they are therefore not entitled to a place among elementary substances at all But custom is too strong for us in the matter of the diphthongs, and we set them down in our list of elementary sounds, adding the proviso that they have no business to be there We saw that there are these four, the sound of *i* in *fine*, *oi* in *noise*, *ou* in *house*, and *u* in *mute*, to which is sometimes added the broader form of the *i* in *fine*, viz the *i* in *aye*, or the provincial pronunciation of the *i* in *fine*, which we hear from uneducated people who talk of a 'faime taime' We are under no obligation however to recognise mispronunciations of vowels and to add these to our list It is only in the word *aye*, as in the phrase 'The Ayes have it', that this broad sound is uttered in any word by people who can be said to speak correctly

The following statement gives the results in a slightly different form.

Elementary or Simple Sounds in English are { 15 Vowels, viz 6 *a*, 2 *e*, 1 *i*, 2 *o*, 4 *u*; 20 Consonants { Sonants, *g*, *d*, *b*, *dh*, *z*, *zh*, *v*; Surds, *h*, *k*, *t*, *p*, *th*, *s*, *sh*, *f*; Liquids, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *ng*

To which the usage of grammarians constrains us to add,

2 Semi-Vowels, *w*, *y*
5 Diphthongs, *i*, *ai*, *oi*, *ou*, *eu*

This table gives us **15 vowels and 20 consonants, making a total of 35 simple indivisible sounds in English.** If we add the two semi vowels to the list, there are 37 such sounds If to these we add the five diphthongal sounds, there are 42 Most writers on the subject state the number of simple sounds as 42 or 43, though there are slight differences in the lists Thus some writers

omit the *ng* sound in *king*, which has been inserted above. On the other hand, we have left out the sound of *wh* in *what*. With regard to this sound, it should be noticed that when the aspirate is sounded, as it is by Scotchmen and Irishmen, and as it ought to be by everybody, the aspirate comes before the *w* and not after it, and in this order the letters used to be written in Old English, *hwat* and not *what*. If this is regarded as a simple and not as a compound sound, it must be added to the list.

53 If we run over the letters of the alphabet, we shall see that some of them find no place in our classification. The following letters are absent from the list —c, q, j, x. Why is this?

The letter *c* is absent because it represents no sound in English not already represented by *k*, *s*, or *sh*. *Cat* is pronounced precisely as *kat* would be pronounced, *city* as *sity*, *special* as *speshal*. Thus the letter *c* is superfluous.

The letter *q* occurs only before *u* and, in combination with it, represents the sound of *k*+*w*, a compound, as in *queen*, or, more rarely, the simple sound of *k*, as in *quay*, *cheque*.

For a different reason we reject the other two letters. They do not stand for simple or elementary sounds at all, but represent compounds. So—

j is a combination of *d*+*zh*,

x „ „ „ *k*+*s* in *excel*, or of *g*+*z* in *exert*.

Notice that not only *can* these sounds be represented by a combination of letters, but they *ought* to be represented thus. For it is the business of the alphabet to furnish us with separate signs for simple sounds but not for compound sounds. There is no more reason why we should have a shorthand symbol in one letter to express *k*+*s* than there is reason why the alphabet should supply

us with a shorthand symbol for *and* Such a symbol we do indeed possess in the form &, but we do not regard this symbol as a letter of the alphabet, and nobody but an American humourist would employ it in spelling other words, writing 'h&some' for *handsome* and 'understd&' for *understand* The like criticism applies to the compound sound represented by *ʃ* The objection may be raised that, if *x* is rejected because it can be represented by *k* + *s*, we ought to get rid of *f* because it can be represented by *p* + *h*, and that we might spell *fife*, *phiphe*, just as we spell *philosophy* with a *ph* But the cases are quite different The sound of *f* is not a compound of *p* + *h* It is a simple sound, and it is entitled to a separate letter It is the use of the *ph* for *f* which is open to censure from the alphabetical stand point We use the *ph* because the words containing it come from the Greek, but if we spelt according to sound, the *ph* would disappear, and we should write *filosofy* instead of *philosophy*

54 The following points connected with the subject of sounds in English deserve attention

(1) Two mutes of unequal degrees of sharpness and flatness cannot be sounded together in the same syllable, or, if we employ the terms which we saw reason to prefer, a sonant and a surd in juxtaposition cannot be pronounced in the same syllable We may write them together, but to sound them both as they are written is impossible It is important to notice this, because sonants and surds often are thus written together, when we form the plurals of nouns or the past tenses of verbs The ordinary way of making plurals is to add *-s* to the singular Now *s* is a surd mute Add *s* to a noun ending in a surd sound, *e g* *pat*, and the result can be pronounced as it is written, *pats* But add *s* to a noun ending in a sonant, sound, *e g* *pad*, and the result cannot be pronounced as it is written, *pads* What we do pronounce is *padz*, two sonants We naturally make the ending *s* give way and turn it into *z*, instead of preserving the *s* and changing the last letter of the word into *t*, as this latter course would alter the meaning of the noun If we try the experiment with other nouns ending in sonant letters, *e g* *hog*, *slab*, we shall find that it is beyond our power to keep the sound of the *g* or *b* and at the same time to give its proper sound to the final *s* We must say either *hogz*, *slabz*, or *hocks*, *slaps* The same principle is seen

at work in the past tense of verbs when an *ed* is added to the present Take the word *walk* and add *ed* *k* is a surd sound, *d* is a sonant One or other of the sounds must give way, if we pronounce them in the same syllable The *d* gives way, otherwise the root itself would be changed, and we pronounce the past tense as if it were written with a surd *t*, *walkt* The same thing happens with such words as *slap*, *hiss*, *cuff*, in which we write *slapped*, *hissed*, *cuffed*, but give these forms the sound of *slapt*, *hisst*, *cufft*

(2) Our natural laziness induces us to save trouble in the pronunciation of sounds Accordingly we find—

1 That sounds which involve a good deal of effort in their utterance tend to disappear from words Thus *if* was formerly *gif*, *day* was *dæg*, *godly* was *godlic* We no longer sound the *gh* in *light* and similar words, though we continue to write it Many words which now begin with a *y* began in old English with a *g*

Again, words have in many instances lost a syllable, sometimes at the beginning, sometimes in the middle, sometimes at the end If we compare *bishop* with *episcopal*, we see that the word has been shorn of its initial *e* so *diamond* is *adamant* without the initial *a* *bus* is *omnibus* after a double decapitation *Palsy* is the same as *paralysis* with the *ra* dropped out *proxy* is *procuracy* in reduced circumstances Examples of the tendency to cut words down at the end occur in *cab*, which used to be *cabriolet*, in *miss*, which is a curtailed form of *mistress*, and in *consols*, which represents *consolidated stocks* School slang supplies illustrations of the same process of abridgment in the words *exam* for *examination*, *trans* and *con* for *translation* and *construe*

11 But, curiously, letters have in some cases crept into words, apparently to render the pronunciation easier If we compare with the Latin *numerus*, *tener*, *camera*, the English *number*, *tender*, *chamber*, we notice the insertion of a *b* or a *d* It is supposed that to pronounce these words with the *b* or *d* was found less trouble than to pronounce them without these strengthening letters. For the like reason we have put in *s* into *passager* and made *passenger*, an *n* between the two syllables of *night gale* and made *nightingale*, an *a* between the two syllables of *black moor* and made *blackamoor* All such changes are called euphonic, or are said to be made for the sake of euphony, *i e* owing to our desire to save ourselves effort in speech when we can

(3) *Umlaut* We sometimes find that, when a syllable containing a short vowel is added to a word, there is a tendency to shorten the vowel of the original word into something more nearly approaching conformity with the vowel of the ending This process is called Umlaut Thus the addition of the suffix turns *cat* into *kitten*, *cock* into *chicken*, *thumb* into *thimble*, *fox* into *vixen*.

QUESTIONS

1 Say whether the sounds corresponding to the following letters are (1) sonant or surd, (2) mute or spirant, (3) labial, dental, guttural, or palatal,—*k*, *d*, *z*, *f*, *th*, *m*

2 Which of the following combinations cannot be pronounced as they are written? Why not?—*tacks*, *tags*, *dogs*, *docks*, *staffs*, *staves*, *sods*, *sots*, *slaps*, *slabs*, *jumped*, *erazed*, *crashed*, *robbed*, *stopped*, *flocked*, *flogged*

3 Explain the nature of the changes which the following words exhibit when they are compared with the corresponding forms supplied by other languages, or by our own language at an earlier stage — 'enough,' Ger *genug* 'I,' Ger *ich* 'lord,' O E *hlaford* 'rain,' Ger *regen* 'way,' Ger *weg* 'morrow, Ger *morgen* 'warden' and 'guardian' 'warrant' and 'guarantee' 'story' and 'history' 'spite' and 'despite' 'uncle,' Lat *avunculus* 'dropsy,' Gk *hydrops* 'miss' and 'mistress' 'petty,' Fr *petit* 'peril,' Lat *periculum* 'sexton' and 'sacristan' 'citizen,' Fr *citoyen* 'firth' and 'frith' 'long' and 'linger' 'old' and 'elder' 'vain' and 'vanity' 'cook' and 'kitchen' 'thunder,' Ger *donner* 'city,' Lat *civitas* 'priest' and 'presbyter' 'tremble' and 'tremor' 'cinder,' Lat *cineres* 'Birmingham' and 'Brummagem'

4 How does the accent of the following words affect their meaning?—*affix*, *contest*, *frequent*, *august*, *torment*, *refuse*, *compact*, *desert*, *conjure*, *collect*, *minute*, *invalid*

5 These words were formerly accented in the following way — *bondage*, *advertisement*, *balcóny*, *mischievous*, *académy*, *contrary* Mark the syllable on which the accent falls now What tendency does the change indicate? What means have we of knowing that a word once bore a different accent from the accent which it bears now?

6 Some letters are said to be superfluous Exemplify this with respect to some of the letters in the following sentence —'The fox ran quickly near the city walls'

7. Give words illustrating the various sounds represented by the letter *a* in English

Classify the mute consonants into labials, dentals, and gutturals, and also into thin, middle, and aspirate

[The following table contains the classification required

	Surds Thin Sharp Hard	Sonants Middle Flat Soft	Aspirate
Labials	p	b	ph, bh
Dentals	t	d	th, dh
Gutturals	k	g	kh, gh

The student must observe that none of these aspirated mutes occur in English The aspirated mute *ph* is not the *f* sound of *photograph* it is the *ph* of *uphold* The *th* is not the sound which we have in *thin* it is the sound which we have in *at home* The *kh* is the Greek χ, not the sound of *ch* in *church* or *loch* The sounds of *ph*, *th*, *ch*, as we pronounce them are not Mutes at all they are Spirants or Breaths See Abbott and Seeley's *English Lessons*, p 283]

8 Distinguish the true from the false Diphthongs in the following words —*pain*, *noise*, *new*, *people*, *yeoman*, *build*, *now*, *found*, *eye*, *clean*, *rough*

CHAPTER VI

Signs or Letters

55 How may our 100,000 words or significant sounds be represented best in writing?

One way would be to have a different symbol or picture for every word, after the fashion of the Chinese But consider how awkward and troublesome such a method of representing our words would be Think of the burden on the memory of associating even five hundred words with as many distinct pictures To learn the meaning of five thousand such pictures would require years of study. Try to realise our difficulties if, instead of representing numbers by a combination of the digits 0 to 9 and by using the device of place, we employed a different symbol for every different number Our means of numeration would in this case be of a very imperfect character Now, although 100,000 distinct sounds may exist in English speech, these distinct sounds are formed by the combination of about forty simple or elementary sounds, and a corresponding number of symbols, or signs, or letters, combined together, will enable us to represent all our existing words and as many additional words as our language may hereafter receive. Suppose that the words *gun*, *rod*, were represented by pictures, and that a person had never learnt these pictures, or having learnt them had forgotten their meaning, he would be at a loss to understand the sense of a passage in which they occurred

But when he has once learnt the meaning of the signs *g*, *u*, *n*, *r*, *o*, *d*, he can combine them so as to represent these words, or can interpret the words when he sees them in print, as rapidly as he can write down the sign for three-hundred and-twenty-seven, or recognise the meaning of 327, when he has once mastered the use of figures

56 We saw in the preceding chapter that in pronouncing English words we make use of 15 distinct simple or elementary vowel sounds and of 20 simple or elementary consonantal sounds To these we added the two semi-vowel sounds and, out of respect for the opinions of other writers, five diphthongal blends, making a total of 42 sounds for which we require 42 signs If we had a perfect alphabet, it would fulfil these two conditions

1 **Every simple or elementary sound would have a separate sign**

2. **No such sound would have more than one sign**

And then, if we always used our perfect alphabet consistently and employed its proper sign for each of these sounds, it would be as easy a matter to spell a word when we had learnt our alphabet, as it is to write down a number when we have learnt the use of figures Such a system of spelling would be **phonetic**, that is, **spelling according to the sound** Our spelling is far from being phonetic The chief cause of this is the imperfect nature of our alphabet We saw that of the twenty-six letters which it contains, four are useless, *c*, *j*, *q*, and *x*, so our twenty six letters are reduced to twenty-two, by means of which we have to express forty-two simple sounds The alphabet is open to the twofold criticism that it is (1) **Deficient**, to the extent of nearly half the requisite number of letters, and (2) **Redundant**, in possessing four letters which are of no

se

The deficiency is best seen in the vowels, of which we enumerated fifteen these are represented by five signs, so ten signs are lacking under this head Of the twenty elementary consonantal sounds, five are without corresponding separate signs,—*zh*, *sh*, *dh*, *th*, *ng*. This brings up the deficiency to fifteen If signs are supplied for the five diphthongal sounds, the total number of new letters which we should require amounts to twenty We saw that the available signs in our present alphabet are twenty-two in number Add to these the twenty signs which are wanting, and we obtain a perfect alphabet of forty-two letters with which to represent the forty-two simple sounds in our language

57 A phonetic system would be of immense advantage in saving the time which we spend during our early life in learning how to spell To master an alphabet of forty two letters would of course take longer than to master an alphabet of twenty-six letters But the alphabet once learnt, mistakes in spelling would be almost as rare as mistakes are now in writing down numbers Spelling books and dictation would be almost unnecessary This is what we should gain by adopting the system The drawback to the introduction of the system would be this, that our printed books would be out of date To the generation which had learnt the new system, our existing literature would be unintelligible until it was reprinted according to the reformed method This disadvantage would not however be very serious All the books which are worth reading by the ordinary man might be printed in the revised version at a small cost, and the student who used our present libraries of English works for purposes of research would soon overcome the difficulties of our present spelling well enough to read existing books

But the system stands no chance of being adopted because of two obstacles in the way. (i) People who have learnt our present mode of spelling will never consent to begin reading over again with a new ABC at middle age And (ii) a uniform pronunciation must be adopted throughout the country before a phonetic system can be introduced If a Lancashire man reverses the vowel sounds in *put* and *butter* and spells phonetically, the words *put* and *butter* would be written with their vowels reversed in the north and in the south of England On the other hand, if these words are written in the same way throughout the country while the pronunciation varies in different parts, the spelling is no longer phonetic

It is sometimes urged as an objection against a phonetic mode of spelling, that the etymology, or derivation, of many words would be obscured by its adoption, that the word *city*, for example, if spelt *site*, would fail to suggest to our minds the Latin *civitas* and its train of ennobling associations But this line of objection seems a little insincere and pedantic. To the student of English, reflexion and research would reveal the meaning of the word however it might be spelt, and as for the ordinary man, we may be quite sure that when he goes up to town in his omnibus he is thinking of the City in quite other connexions than its ennobling associations with the Latin *civitas* It is urged again that a phonetic system would obscure words pronounced alike but written differently, such as *chord*, *cord*, *pear*, *pair*, *pare*, *hair*, *hare*, and so on But this seems a somewhat childish objection *Box* and *post* have various meanings, but the context shows us which is the right one, and if we can understand a man who uses the word *hare* in conversation, without his stopping to explain that he means an animal, no one but a person of pains taking stupidity would find any ambiguity in the word when he met with it in print

58 As our alphabet is defective to the extent of twenty out of the forty-two letters which it ought to contain, extra duty has to be performed by some of the twenty-two available letters Thus to show that a vowel is long or short, various devices are employed, which are called *orthographical expedients*

We show that a vowel is long—
1, by adding a mute *e* at the end of the word, as *gate*, *rote*, *site*
2, by inserting an *a* after the vowel, as *neat*, *coat*
3, by doubling the vowel, as *feed*, *cool*
The three processes are illustrated by the words *mete*, *meat*, *meet*

We show that a vowel is short by doubling the consonant which follows it, as *dinner*, *getting*, *rotten*

59 The deficiencies of the alphabet would inevitably make our spelling irregular and unscientific, but inconsistency runs riot in our orthography to an extent which is really impressive We may illustrate this in two ways by showing

(1) how the same sound is represented by a variety of letters

(2) how the same letter or combination of letters stands for a variety of sounds

As examples of (1), let us take the sound of *a* in *fate* Other ways of representing this sound readily suggest themselves —*laid*, *rein*, *say*, *prey*, *gaol*, *break*, *eh*

Other ways of representing the sound of *o* in *no* —*coat*, *rote*, *soul*, *roe*, *yeoman*, *owe*, *though*, *sew*, *sow*

The sound of *e* in *me* —*beat*, *beet*, *mete*, *relief*, *deceit*, *key*, *quay*, machine, people

The consonants afford fewer examples of these eccentricities, but they afford some

The *f* sound in *fill* is expressed also in *philosophy*, *cuff*, *laugh*

The *k* sound in *kit* appears in *cat*, *back*, *quay*, *ache*

The *s* in *sin* is represented in *cinder*, *scent*, *schism*

In illustration of (2), we will take examples of single letters, vowel and consonant, and of combinations of letters, the sounds of which are not uniform

The letter *a* illustrates the variety of uses to which a single sign may be put It stands for six different sounds of *a*, in *fat*, *fate*, *father*, *fall*, *fare*, *want*, and is used in many words where it is not pronounced at all, *e g* it shows that the preceding vowel is long in *boat*, *meat*, it has the sound of *o* in *what*, and of *e* in *many*

As examples from the consonants, take *s*, which is sonant in *praise*, surd in *sing*, stands for *zh* in *measure*, for *sh* in *mansion*, and is silent in *isle* or *aisle*

The letter *g* has one sound in *gum*, another in *gem*, followed by *h* its sound is sometimes that of *f*, as in *laugh*, and sometimes it is not sounded at all, as in *though*

Some combinations of letters are very uncertain in their pronunciation *ough* is a good instance of this *Though*, *through*, *cough*, *rough*, *plough*, by no means exhaust the list of various sounds

Of the English alphabet we may therefore say that it is (1) Defective, (2) Redundant, and (3) Inconsistent.

60 Why is English spelling so difficult?

1. Because the alphabet is defective, and its deficiencies are supplied by different devices in different words

2 Because our spelling has been pretty well fixed for nearly three hundred years, since the translation of the Bible in James I 's reign supplied a standard of orthography throughout the country, whilst the pronunciation has probably changed largely in the interval

3. Because our words have come to us from

many sources, and we have kept the spelling which they had in the languages from which we took them but have given the words an English pronunciation Thus we spell *city* with a *c*, not with an *s*, because it comes from *civitas*, *philosophy* with a *ph* and not with an *f*, *chemistry* with a *ch* and not with a *k*, because of their Greek origin, victuals has a *c* because of the Latin *victus*, from *vivo*, doubt has a *b* because of the Latin *dubito* *syntax* from the Greek would be obscured in the guise of *sintaks*, and *phlegm* would be changed from its original beyond recognition if we wrote it *flem*

61 Where did our English alphabet come from, and how did we get it?

Our alphabet came from the Latin alphabet, the Latin from the Greek, and the Greek from the Phœnician During the Roman occupation of Britain, the Britons picked up the Latin alphabet, and the English learnt it from the Britons Before their migration to this country the English had an alphabet which was in use among the Teutonic tribes, called *Runic* Inscriptions containing these *runes* still exist on stones and crosses in Norway and Sweden, in the north of England and in parts of Scotland When the English settlers adopted the Roman alphabet they preserved two of their own runes, the letters called *wen* and *thorn* *Wen* or *w* was written ƿ, *thorn* or *th* and *dh* was written þ and afterwards ð The letters *w* and *th* took their place after the Norman Conquest The word *the* would in Old English characters be written þᵉ Hence has arisen the notion that in Old English it was written *yᵉ* or *ye* and so pronounced People who devise programmes for fancy fairs, in what they conceive to be the Early English style, have the idea that the frequent use of *yᵉ* for *the* and the addition of an *e* at the end of every word which ends in a consonant will convert 19th century Eng-

lish into 9th century English But this is a mistake Our forefathers said *the* as we say it, though they wrote it with a single sign for the *th*, and correctly so, for the sound is a simple one

The letter j was originally used merely as a different form of i, an i with a tail to it The sounds which we now represent by i and j were not distinguished by symbol till the 17th century Rather earlier than this, a distinction was made in the use of the letters u and v so that they represented respectively vowel and consonant

The word *alphabet* comes from the names of the first two letters of the Greek alphabet, *alpha, beta*

62 This seems to be a suitable point at which to give an answer to the question,—**When are Capital letters to be used?**

1 At the beginning of every sentence

2 At the beginning of every line in poetry

3 At the beginning of quoted passages *e g* He said, "Let us go and see"

4 For Proper names

5 For the various names of God

6 For titles of office and officials —Secretaryship of the Treasury, Lord Chancellor but capitals are often dispensed with in these cases

7 For the pronoun I

8 For the interjection O

QUESTIONS

1 What is meant by Orthography? Point out any orthographical irregularities in the spelling of *convey, inveigh, proceed, precede, sovereign, before, therefore*

[To show the inconsistency of spelling *convey, inveigh*, as we do, give their derivation They come from *veho* How then can the *g* have any business in *inveigh?* Again, *proceed* and *precede* contain the Latin

cedo Why should this be differently represented in the two words? *Sovereign* has been spelt thus owing to a mistaken idea that it comes from *reign* It should be *sovran* *Therefore* should be *therefor*]

2 Give examples of the different pronunciation of these letters — *i, u, ie, ti, ch*

3 In what other ways do we represent the sounds of *au* in *haul*, *o* in *fond*, *g* in *ginger*, *x* in *Xenophon*, *sc* in *science*?

4 Mention words in which the following letters are written but not sounded — *p, b, gh, t, '*

CHAPTER VII.

ETYMOLOGY.

63 **A language is a collection of articulate and significant sounds.** If we listen to a baby, we find that his utterances consist of such sounds as *ul-ul-ul*, *ga-ga*, *um-um*, sounds which are merely noises, like the barking of a dog or the crowing of a cock Significance, or meaning, they may indeed have, and the observant mother or nurse may understand that one noise is made when the baby wants his bottle and that another expresses his happiness when he has got it But to persons outside the family circle these cries convey no more meaning than the cries of the farmyard Articulate they certainly are not When the baby says 'pa,' 'ma,' we remark with truth that he is beginning to talk quite nicely. Talk, speech, words,—these terms point to sounds which are significant and articulate, and such sounds in English form the subject-matter with which we have to deal in English grammar In our daily lives we commonly use words in connexion with other words to form sentences, but we can consider them by themselves, though we do not use them by themselves The part of grammar which treats of words **taken separately** is called **Etymology** the part which treats of words as forming **portions of a sentence** is called **Syntax** In dealing with Etymology we shall often find it useful to cross the confines of Syntax

64. Etymology deals with the classification of words, their derivation, and inflexion

There are various ways of classifying words In the dictionary we arrange them in alphabetical order, in the spelling book we arrange them according to their number of syllables Now as language is employed by us for the expression of our thoughts, and our thoughts are usually expressed in sentences, for the purposes of grammar we shall group the words of the language in classes according to their different functions in the sentences which we form with them to express our meaning By 'different functions' we mean the special work accomplished by different kinds of words The function of a pump is to raise water, of a balance to weigh things, of a noun to serve as a name of things, of a verb to make assertions about things Small differences of function may be neglected in the classification of words, (just as we classify a machine as a pump, whether it is a force-pump or a common-pump), but we cannot usefully reduce the number of classes of words in grammar below eight, and these eight different classes we call the Parts of Speech

65 The Parts of Speech are the classes into which the words of a language fall, when they are arranged according to their separate functions in a sentence

The following sentence contains eight words, and the part played by every one of the eight is different

"Oh! and was he in good health yesterday?"

Oh is an interjection, a sound expressing sudden feeling We could omit it from the sentence without disturbing the construction as the derivation of the name implies, it is something 'thrown in'

And is a conjunction it joins on the words which follow it to the previous sentence

Was is a verb

He is a pronoun

In is a preposition showing that the noun *health* stands in a certain relation to the rest of the sentence

Good is an adjective limiting or restricting the meaning of the word *health*

Health is a noun

Yesterday is an adverb limiting the application of the verb as regards time

66 In parsing a word, our first business is to refer it to its proper class among these parts of speech The form of the word is seldom of help to us in English when we are thus engaged It is often necessary to look to the context before we can decide in any particular case to what class the word belongs

Thus in the sentence 'The *after* growth was considerable,' *after* is an adjective in '*After* me, the deluge,' it is a preposition in 'Jill came tumbling *after*,' it is an adverb in 'He called *after* you left,' it has the force of a conjunction So again the word *stone* has various functions in different sentences In '*Stone* him to death,' it is a verb in 'He threw a *stone*,' it is a noun in 'This is a *stone* fence,' it is an adjective Once more, the word *but* serves in many capacities In 'Many are called, *but* few are chosen,' it is a conjunction in '*But* few are chosen,' where *but* signifies 'only,' it is an adverb in 'All *but* John were drowned,' where *but* signifies 'except,' it is a preposition in 'There is no one *but* thinks you mad,' *but* does the work of a relative pronoun with a negative attached, 'There is no one *who* does *not* think you mad'

67 Attempts have been made to reduce these eight parts of speech to a smaller number of groups Thus words have been arranged in the following four divisions

I	Names of THINGS	1	Nouns
		2	Personal Pronouns
II	Expressing ATTRIBUTES	3	Adjectives
		4	Verbs
		5	Adverbs
III	Expressing RELATIONS	6	Conjunctions, between sentences
		7	Prepositions, between things
IV	Expressing SUDDEN FEELINGS,	8	Interjections

At our present stage there would be no advantage in discussing this or any similar scheme in detail From the

purely grammatical point of view, it is more important to notice that some of the parts of speech are inflected and others are not

68 **Inflexion is a change in the form of a word to mark a change in its meaning** Thus *-s* in *fathers* denotes that we are speaking of more than one *father* it is a sign of the plural. So *-ed* in *walked* denotes that the action occurred formerly it is a sign of the past tense. Again, *-er* in *taller* denotes the presence of a quality in a greater degree than is implied by *tall* it is a sign of comparison Again, *-ess* in *authoress* denotes that the person to whom the name is applied is a female it is a sign of gender All these modifications of form,—*s*, *ed*, *er*, *ess*,—are inflexions Sometimes we have inflexion without the addition of anything to the word at all *Man* makes its plural *men*, *goose* makes *geese*, *drunk* makes its past tense *drank*, *fall* makes *fell*, by inflexion. There is change of form though nothing has been added Now applying the possibility of inflexion as a principle of division to the parts of speech, we shall find that the two groups are composed thus

Inflexional		*Non Inflexional*	
1	Nouns	5	Prepositions
2	Adjectives	6	Conjunctions
3	Pronouns	7	Interjections
4	Verbs		

Of adverbs, some are inflected to mark comparison and others are not The same remark is true to a smaller extent of adjectives, but our classification is in the main correct

69 **The English language has but few inflexions** A Roman could say *lapidi*, *lapide* we have to use prepositions and say *to a stone*, *by a stone* A Roman could say *amavisset*, *amarentur* we must employ pronouns

and auxiliary verbs, and say *he would have loved, they would be loved* In Old English there was a fair supply of inflexions, but these were in great measure destroyed by the fusion of Norman and Englishman The Norman conqueror had to learn our vocabulary, but use our grammatical forms he would not. We pointed out in an earlier chapter that, though our English vocabulary contains twice as many Latin words as native words, we use four or five of the latter for one of the former in our everyday speech, since the words which necessarily occur in every sentence, such as pronouns, conjunctions, and auxiliary verbs, are exclusively of English origin And we said that we were justified therefore in describing our language as an English and not as a Romance language. We now see that there is a further justification for so describing it in the fact that nearly all of the surviving inflexions, which constitute an important part of the grammar of our language, are of English origin

A language like ours which has but few inflexions is sometimes called **analytic** A language like Latin which has many inflexions is called **synthetic** The distinction is an important one, but the terms **inflexional** and **non-inflexional** would express it equally well and convey the proper meaning to our minds at once.

70 **The sum-total of the inflexions which the words in a language undergo constitutes its Accidence.** Accidence is thus narrower in its meaning than Etymology **Accidence**, (from Latin *accidere*, 'to happen'), comprises the **changes of form** which happen to words **Etymology** deals with these **changes of form** and also with the **classification** and **derivation** of words English grammar has but little accidence, because its inflexions are few, but there is much to be said on the subject of its etymology

The sum-total of the inflexions marking number and case of a noun or pronoun is called its Declension.

The sum-total of the inflexions of a verb is called its Conjugation

71 Before leaving the subject of inflexion, let us note the principal consequences of the loss of our inflexions in English.

(1) We employ prepositions in place of case-endings, and auxiliaries instead of inflexions in verbs

(2) The order of words in a sentence admits of very little variety in modern English *Brutus occidit Caesarem* could be arranged in six ways *Brutus killed Caesar* can be arranged in only one Why? Because to a Roman the form of the ending would show that *Brutus* was the subject and *Caesarem* the object, whether either word stood first, second, or third, in the sentence Thus for purposes of emphasis a Roman was able to vary the order of his words With us the place of subject and object is fixed

(3) There is nothing in the form of our words to show whether they are one part of speech rather than another Hence one part of speech is often used for another We can turn a noun into an adjective and talk of an '*iron* bar,' or into a verb and say '*Iron* the clothes' We can make adjectives into nouns and speak of our *equals*, or *betters*, or *inferiors* We can manufacture adverbs out of other parts of speech and say '*Crack* went the whip,' 'I am going *home*,' 'He came *safe*,' 'He is not a *bit* surprised' We also find such expressions as '*But* me no *buts*,' '*Uncle* me no *uncles*,' signifying 'Don't say *but* to me,' 'Don't call me *uncle*' The sense indeed is plain, but such forms would be impossible in a synthetic or inflexional language like Latin

QUESTIONS

1 What parts of speech are the words in italics in the following phrases or sentences?

Deck the room—Clear the *deck*—A *deck* cabin

He was *off* side—He was thrown *off*—He was thrown *off* his horse

He keeps a *horse*—He gave a *horse* laugh—To *horse* the regiment

I walked *past*—I walked *past* the gate—I forget the *past*—I forget the *past* follies

Get up *steam*—*Steam* up the river—A *steam* tram

2 What parts of speech may each of the following words be?—*round, close, equal* Write one short sentence to illustrate each use of them

3 What is an inflexional language?

What parts of speech may be inflected in English? Illustrate your answer by examples

4 Write down in a column all the parts of speech Underline the two which you consider most important, and doubly underline the two which you consider least important, giving reasons in each case for your opinion

5 Form a sentence containing at least six different parts of speech, and point out in it one example of each

CHAPTER VIII

NOUNS

72 A noun is the name of anything.

The word *noun* is derived from the Latin *nomen*, which means 'a name' No sentence can be formed without a noun, or something equivalent to a noun, expressed or implied, and a verb, also expressed or implied 'Birds fly,' 'Politicians wrangled,' are examples of the simplest form of sentence Each contains a noun which indicates the thing about which the statement is made, and a verb by means of which we make the statement The word *verb* is derived from the Latin *verbum*, 'a word,'—the word without which the sentence would collapse But to discuss whether noun or verb is the more essential to a sentence seems as useless as it would be to inquire which of the two blades in a pair of scissors does more of the cutting Sometimes, no doubt, it looks as if we could have a sentence without a noun or without a verb When I say 'Go,' the sense is clear But the noun, or rather its substitute the pronoun, is understood, and in giving an analysis of the sentence we should supply it and say that the subject is *You* and the predicate *go* And in older English it was often so supplied, and people said 'Go thou.' Again, if I ask 'Who told you this?' and you answer 'Jones,' the verb is understood, and the full expression would be 'Jones told me this,' or 'Jones did' Thus these forms of expression are

only apparently exceptions to the statement that every sentence contains noun and verb. They are elliptical expressions, a word is omitted which is required to complete the grammatical structure of the sentence, but though omitted it is understood

73 The definition of a noun suggests a few remarks

1 Guard against the not uncommon blunder of confusing the noun and the thing The noun is the name of the thing The paper on which this book is printed is a thing, not a noun the word *paper* is a noun

2 Bear in mind that the word 'thing' is here used to denote all objects of thought, whether these objects of thought be things with life or without it, material or immaterial, real or imaginary In the language of our definition, every object that we can think about, whether it have an existence or not, is a *thing*, and the *name* of such a thing is a *noun Charles, negro, Rome, city, angel, ghost, dragon, point, zero, infinity, nothing*, are nouns, for they are names of objects of thought, *i.e* of things about which we can think

3 The objection may be raised,—Are not some of the pronouns names of things too? If so, why should we place them in a separate class? If Brown says 'I broke the window,' is not *I* the name of the thing about which the assertion is made, just as much as *Brown* or *the boy* is, when we say 'Brown broke the window,' or 'The boy broke the window'? And in this criticism there is some force But these pronouns differ in so important a characteristic from the words which are commonly called nouns, that they deserve to rank as a separate part of speech, although, as their name implies, they are used instead of nouns For when we say 'The boy broke the window,' the term *boy* brings up to our minds a certain uniform conception, we know what we mean by a 'boy' But if Brown says '*I* broke the window,' and Brown's companion Smith says '*I* jogged his elbow,' and the master says '*I* shall make you pay for it between you,' *I* changes its meaning in the mouth of each speaker When Brown and Smith are talking together, Brown calls himself *I* and Smith *you*, while Smith calls Brown *you* and himself *I* But Brown and Smith are always *boys*, and the master is always a *master*, no matter who it is that uses the words

4 This further criticism may be made on the definition, that adjectives are, at any rate sometimes, names of things, that *black* is the name of all black objects,—horses, ink, marble, etc —*round* the name of all round objects,—the moon, a cricket ball, a wheel, a watch glass, etc, so that when I say 'The moon is round,' *round* is a name of the moon

To this objection the answer may be given that in such cases the

adjective qualifies a noun which is understood When I say 'The moon is round,' I mean 'The moon is a round moon' or 'a round thing' Moreover it is only when the adjective is used as a part of the predicate that this ellipsis of the noun is possible As the subject of a sentence the adjective cannot stand alone I cannot say 'Round rotates on its axis,' but must say 'A round object rotates on its axis' In any case it is the noun which is the name of the thing the adjective marks merely a quality of the thing

74 Different classes of nouns.—Common and Proper.

Compare the words *river* and *Henry*. What important difference is there between them? Not this, as is sometimes said, that *river* can be applied to an indefinite number of objects and *Henry* to only one, for *Henry* can be applied to an indefinite number of objects also eight Henrys sat on the throne of England The difference lies in the fact that, when we use the word *river*, it has for us a certain uniform sense The word suggests to our minds the conception of flowing water, banks, source, outfall, and so forth If we found a piece of water in a park and were inclined at first sight to call it a river, but afterwards discovered that it contained neither inlet nor outlet and that we could walk all round it, we should say 'This is not a river, this is a lake' The word *river* has a meaning, and its meaning does not suit a stagnant sheet of water But a person called 'Henry' might equally well have been called 'John,' for the name 'Henry' has no meaning We say that the Thames is a 'river,' because it has certain qualities which the word *river* suggests to our minds But 'Henry' is merely a mark, arbitrarily set upon a person to distinguish him from other people. Any other mark would have done just as well And for one reason or another such marks or names are often changed Thus, Sir Robert Walpole became Earl of Orford During the greater part of his life he was known by the mark *Walpole* for the last few years he was known by the mark *Orford* *Walpole*

and *Orford* are names without meaning, so if we once know to whom they are to be attached as marks, it makes no difference which name we choose for the purpose. If a football club changes its colours, the team is indicated by a new mark. When Walpole became Orford he was indicated by a new mark But if we called a river an 'elephant' or a 'bedstead,' we should talk nonsense, because these words are not merely marks but contain meanings, and their meanings in no wise correspond with the qualities presented by a river Once upon a time, no doubt, people's names had a meaning and were bestowed upon them because people possessed certain qualities The original Redhead may have got his name from the colour of his hair, the original Tomson from the circumstance that he was the son of Tom. But Redhead's posterity perpetuate the name, though they may be black-haired boys or bald-headed men, and a Tomson of to day may have taken the name to enable him to receive a legacy, though his name was formerly Robinson This important distinction is expressed in grammar by the words Common and Proper A common noun is applied to a number of things because they are alike, or possess some quality in common, whereas a proper noun, though it may be applied to several objects, is not applied to these objects because they are alike or possess any quality in common

There are some nouns which contain a meaning but are applicable to only one thing Such nouns we call Singular In the mouth of a Christian or of a Jew, the name *God* is a Singular noun, for Christians and Jews recognise only one God *Whiteness* is a Singular name, for although the quality which we call 'whiteness' is found in many objects, the quality is one and the same Several nouns present the peculiarity of being sometimes Singular and sometimes Common If I say 'Space is infinite,' 'Time flies,' the nouns are Singular if I say 'This space is

larger than that,' 'I have seen him several times,' they are Common

The reader will perceive on reflexion that Proper names are really a special class of Singular names When we make use of a Proper name, we apply it to some particular individual only But Singular nouns with a meaning are few and hard to find in any language, whilst meaningless Singular nouns are many, and they meet us at every turn Hence it is that, in a classification of Nouns for the purposes of Grammar, we usually distinguish between Common and Proper nouns, and not between Common and Singular nouns, of which latter kind Proper nouns are a sub-class

We may define these three classes of nouns thus

A Common Noun is one which can be applied to an indefinite number of things in the same sense

A Singular Noun is one which cannot be applied to more than one thing in the same sense

A Proper Noun is a singular name assigned to an individual as a mere distinguishing mark

75 We may notice that (1) **Proper Nouns** are sometimes **used as Common Nouns**, and (2) **Common nouns** are sometimes **used as Singular nouns**, that is, as names possessing a meaning, but applicable to **only one individual.**

(1) **Proper nouns become common** in two ways

(*a*) When they indicate a **class resembling the individual** denoted by the proper name 'A village Hampden' means a village patriot of an ill tempered woman we may say 'She is a regular Xanthippe' we may speak of promising young cricketers as 'youthful Graces' When parsing words thus employed, describe them as proper nouns used as if common Note however that when

we speak of 'the Browns' or 'the Smiths,' meaning all the people called 'Brown' or 'Smith,' without implying that they have any common quality besides the possession of the same name, these words, though plural, are still proper But if we mean by 'the Marlboroughs and Wellingtons' not the people called Marlborough and Wellington, but great soldiers like Marlborough and Wellington, the proper nouns have passed into common nouns

(*b*) **Proper nouns become common** also when things are named after the persons or places which bear these names *Atlas*, *boycott*, *macadam*, *phaeton*, *brougham*, come from names of persons, *cypress*, *guinea*, *worsted*, *landau*, from names of places[1]

(2) On the other hand a **Common noun** may be used with such qualifying epithets as **to become Singular** 'The last of the Tudors,' 'the present Lord Chancellor,' 'the highest mountain of Europe,' are compound names which can be used correctly of only one object And even without the qualifying words we sometimes interpret the meaning of common nouns in a restricted sense A child who says 'Father told me to do this,' narrows the meaning of 'father' and uses the noun as if it were a singular noun Similarly, by 'the Queen' we signify Victoria, by 'the Prince,' the Prince of Wales These words are like Proper nouns in this respect, that they can be applied to only one individual in the same sense they are unlike them in this respect, that they have a meaning, while *Victoria* and *Albert Edward* have none

76 **Names of Materials** Nouns denoting certain materials, *e g* mud, zinc, gold, rice, arsenic, are never found

[1] Interesting lists of words derived from names of persons and places are given in Meiklejohn's *English Language*, pp 138—144, and in Hewitt's *Manual of Our Mother Tongue*, pp 347—357.

in the plural others of precisely similar character occur in the plural, but always in some special sense *Men* means more than one man, but *tins* does not mean more than a certain quantity of tin, nor *sugars* more than a certain quantity of sugar. *Tins* means cases made of tin, *coppers* means coins made of copper, *irons*, fetters made of iron, *slates*, tiles made of slate, *sugars*, *teas*, *calicoes*, *wines*, mean different sorts or varieties of these commodities, and in these plural forms the nouns are common nouns

77 **A Collective Noun is one which denotes a number of things regarded as forming a whole.** Such nouns as *mob*, *regiment*, *flock*, *congregation*, are collective Both plurals and collectives denote a number of things *boys*, *cricketers*, *soldiers*, *sailors*, are plurals But collectives denote a number of things taken in the aggregate and viewed as forming a single group, *school*, *team*, *army*, *crew*, are collectives Collective nouns are mostly common there are several *schools*, *teams*, *armies*, *crews* Sometimes however we use them in a restricted sense as applicable to only one object Thus, if I say 'The Queen opened Parliament,' the common collective noun *parliament* has its application narrowed down to one assembly, just as the common noun *queen* has its application narrowed down to one person

Collective nouns are also called **Nouns of Multitude**, and in using them we sometimes think of the individuals included in the group rather than of the group as a whole Hence these nouns are found with either singular or plural predicates We may say 'Parliament was unanimous,' if the thought uppermost in our minds is the assembly as a whole, but we may say 'Parliament were all sixes and sevens,' if we are thinking of the assembly as vided into different parties

78 Abstract and Concrete Nouns.

Consider the qualities of the boy sitting opposite. You say he is handsome or plain, clever or stupid, industrious or lazy, thin or fat, tall or short, and so on To these qualities we give names and speak of the handsomeness or plainness, cleverness or stupidity, etc, of the boy Not that the qualities can actually exist apart from the boy, or from some other subject which possesses them We cannot separate the boy's stupidity or fatness and say 'There is the boy, and here I have got his stupidity' But though the qualities have no separate and independent existence, we can consider them separately We can abstract our thoughts from the boy's other qualities and can think and speak of his stupidity, and then, abstracting our attention from the other points of interest which he presents, we can think and speak of his fatness The names of the qualities which we isolate from the rest by this process of abstraction are called **Abstract Nouns** the names of the things which possess the qualities are called **Concrete Nouns**

A Concrete Noun is the name of a thing regarded as possessing attributes.

An Abstract Noun is the name of an attribute or quality of a thing.

For many qualities or attributes no abstract names exist If a boy is brown-haired or first man out of the eleven, he has the qualities of brown-hairedness and of first-man-out-of-the-elevenness, but when there is seldom occasion to speak of qualities, such qualities have not received names, especially if the names would be long and awkward We can speak of *squareness* and *redness*, not of *oblongness* and *vermilionness*

79 Many nouns are abstract in one sense and concrete in another When we say 'His industry

is remarkable,' the word *industry* is abstract, it denotes a quality or attribute But when we say 'The cotton industry is carried on in the north,' *industry* is concrete We can use it in this latter sense in the plural and speak of 'the cotton and iron industries' Now an abstract noun while it remains abstract cannot be used in the plural It seems, no doubt, as if it could be so used sometimes Thus the Prayer-Book has the expression 'negligences and ignorances' But these plurals signify acts or instances of negligence and ignorance, and the words have become concrete If we say 'Beauty is a perishable gift,' *beauty* is an abstract noun, if we say 'The baby is a little beauty,' it is concrete *Length* is abstract when we speak of 'the length of the course,' it is concrete when we say that 'Oxford won by two lengths'

80 Modes of formation of Abstract Nouns

(*a*) Most abstract nouns are formed from adjectives by adding *-ness*, as *goodness* from *good* some are formed by adding *-th*, as tru*th*, slo*th*, from *true*, *slow* these forms are of English origin Latin abstract terminations are seen in *-ty* or *-ity*, as hones*ty*, stupid*ity*, and in *-ce*, as justi*ce*, temperan*ce*

(*b*) Some are formed from verbs by adding *-ion*, as possessi*on*, instructi*on*

(*c*) Some from nouns, as priest*hood*, bond*age*, serf*dom*, friends*hip*, hat*red*, slaver*y*

Questions

1 Take these names and say of each whether it is Proper, Singular, Common, Collective, Abstract, Concrete —*island*, *Somerset House*, *hope*, *a Nero*, *fleet*, *the last Chancellor of the Exchequer*, *truth*, *universe*, *chloroform*, *friendship*, *nobility* Give the reason for your answer in each case

2 State what nouns we get from the following names (*a*) of persons —*Augustus Caesar, Captain Boycott, Epicurus, Dr Guillotin, James II.* (Lat *Jacobus*), *Colonel Negus, Philip of Macedon, Simon Magus, Duns Scotus* (*b*) of places —*Bayonne, Calicut, Canterbury, Damascus, Milan, Spain*

3 The following nouns are names of materials, but they can be used in the plural When so used, what meanings do they bear?—*paper, tea, stone, wood, sand, salt*

4 What is a noun? Is the paper on which you are writing a noun? Shew that the second part of your answer is consistent with your definition

5 Give examples of *collective nouns* and of *names of materials* When are collective nouns treated as singular, and when as plural? Do names of materials ever admit of a plural?

6 Correct—'We must be careful of our healths'

7 Assign each of the nouns in italics in the following sentences to its proper class Give reasons for your answers.

(*a*) The *Terror* sailed yesterday

(*b*) The *nobility* opposed the Crown

(*c*) At the *noise* of the *thunder* she lost *courage*

8 Define Abstract Noun, and give the derivation of the term *abstract* Form an Abstract Noun from (1) an Adjective, (2) a Verb, (3) a Common Noun.

CHAPTER IX.

Inflexion of Nouns —I Gender.

81 **Nouns** are inflected, that is to say, they undergo a change of form, to indicate **Gender**, **Number**, and **Case** In English however these distinctions are often made without any inflexion

82 **Sex** is a **natural distinction** which we find existing in the sentient creatures around us, they are male or female **Gender** is a **grammatical distinction** which we make in **words**, corresponding, in English, to the natural distinction in the sentient creatures Words are masculine or feminine according as the objects to which they are applied are male or female The names of the things around us which are without sex,—and such names form by far the largest portion of the nouns in our vocabulary,—are said to be of **neuter** gender, *i e* of neither masculine nor feminine gender Some nouns are used to denote objects of either sex, such as *parent*, *sovereign* *painter*, *attendant* These nouns are said to be of **common** gender

83 Comparing gender in **English** with gender as we see it in **Latin** or **German**, we note these points of difference

1 In English, **gender corresponds with sex**

Males are denoted by masculine nouns, females by feminine nouns, inanimate things by neuter nouns In Latin or German, inanimate things are often denoted by masculine or feminine nouns *Mons* the Latin for 'mountain' is masculine, *res*, 'a thing,' is feminine, *animal*, 'an animal,' is neuter In German *Loffel*, 'a spoon,' is masculine, *Gabel*, 'a fork,' is feminine, *Messer*, 'a knife,' is neuter French has no neuter, consequently all its nouns are of the masculine or of the feminine gender Our English method is simpler and more rational

To a very limited extent the correspondence of gender with sex in English is interfered with (1) by Personification, a figure of speech under which we refer to inanimate objects as if they were endowed with life and sex Things associated with the idea of strength or destructiveness are treated as males, and their names are masculine *e g death, time, fear, war* Things associated with the idea of grace, or of fertility, are personified as females, and their names are feminine *e g moon, mercy, nature, earth* But very often we do not personify these objects at all we use *he* or *she* to refer to them when we become melodramatic or rhetorical, but in our ordinary moments we employ the neuter pronoun *it* Nor could it be considered a breach of grammatical propriety, if we spoke of a *ship* as *it*

Again (2) we often disregard the sex when we are speaking of children and the lower animals, and use the pronoun *it* So the distinction of masculine and feminine is of very narrow application in English

2 Another point of contrast between English and Latin or German is this These languages possess inflexions marking gender in the adjectives our adjectives have no inflexions of gender, number, or case We say *good man, good woman, good thing* Hence for a foreigner learning English there are only two points requiring attention in reference to gender, one, to use the feminine form of a noun, where one exists, to denote a female, the other, to use *he, she, it, his, her, its*, correctly, according as these pronouns or adjectives relate to a masculine, feminine, or neuter noun

84. Gender is the form of a noun or pronoun

corresponding in English to the sex of the thing named.

We have in English three ways of making a distinction in language corresponding to the difference of sex in the objects themselves

1 By Inflexion
2 By Composition
3 By using an entirely different word

85 (1) **Gender marked by Inflexion** The suffixes, *i e* the terminations, or endings, of words indicating gender may be classified thus

Of English origin
- -ster, in *spinster*
- -en, in *vixen*

Of Foreign origin
- -ess, Norman French, *countess*
- -trix, Latin, *testatrix*
- -ine, Greek, *heroine*, German, *landgravine*
- -a, Italian or Spanish, *signora*, *infanta*

86 **Remarks on these forms**

The native English suffixes *-ster* and *-en* survive with their feminine force only in the words *spinster* and *vixen* *Spinster* properly signifies a female *spinner*, but now means 'an unmarried woman' In proper names, such as *Webster* and *Brewster* (feminines respectively of *weaver* and *brewer*) the form still exists, as it does in the words *tapster*, *maltster*, but the signification of the suffix has disappeared In *trickster*, *youngster*, *gamester*, it is employed with an idea of depreciation or contempt So completely has the original force of the ending been lost that to the feminine forms *songster* and *seamster* we have added the inflexion *-ess*, making *songstress* and *seamstress*, words which are open to the twofold objection that they are (*a*) double feminines, (*b*) hybrids, *i e* they contain elements borrowed from different languages, the original words being of English origin and the suffix *-ess* coming from the French

In *vixen* two things are to be noticed (*a*) the appearance of *fox* in the form *vox* to this day a Somersetshire labourer uses *v* in place of *f* in many words, the Authorised Translation of the Bible preserves for

us the word *wine fat*, which has now been ousted by the form *wine vat*, belonging to the Southern dialect of English (*b*) the modification of the root vowel from *o* to *e* this is due to Umlaut See p 49

Foreign endings—The use of the suffix *-ess*, borrowed from the French *-esse*, is the only method of formation which is employed when we make a new feminine word at the present day so, *authoress*, *doctress* Occupations once reserved to men are now thrown open to women If we wish to mark the female sex of the persons following these occupations, we must either use compounds and say *lady doctor*, *lady lawyer*, or manufacture inflected forms and say *doctress*, *lawyeress*

This French suffix is freely added to nouns of English extraction, without any regard being paid to the fact that the resulting forms are hybrids *e g goddess*, *shepherdess*

Frequently, when this ending is attached to a word, there is an omission of a vowel or of a syllable *e g actress*, *empress*, *governess*, *negress*, *sorceress* *Abbess=abbotess* *Duchess* comes from the French *duchesse* The feminine of *marquis* or *marquess* is *marchioness* The root of this word occurs in *marches*, meaning 'boundaries' or 'confines' 'Lord of the *Marches*' In *mistress* we have the feminine of *master* with the vowel weakened as in the pronunciation of *Mr* The feminine of *lad*, *laddess*, has become *lass*

The remaining suffixes do not exemplify *English* modes of formation of feminine nouns at all The words which contain them are borrowed directly from foreign languages and therefore illustrate no process of English grammar

87 (2) **Gender marked by composition.** When we make a new word by joining together two or more existing words, we call the process **composition** and the resulting word a **compound** Thus *he-goat*, *cock-sparrow*, *maid-servant* are **compounds** each part of the words has a meaning by itself Compare with these the word *authoress*, formed from *author* by adding *-ess* Now *-ess* has a force only when added to another word, by itself it is without any meaning, it is a mere suffix, not a word We call such a word as *authoress* a **derivative**

The distinction marked by these two processes of Inflexion and Composition may be said to come under our definition of gender as 'the *form* of a word which corresponds to a difference of sex' *Authoress* and *he goat* are modifications of *author* and *goat*, marking a change in their meaning The indication of gender by Inflexion is a genuine grammatical process, but we can bring the compound forms also within the

four corners of the definition The remaining method is not a grammatical process in such pairs of words as *brother, sister, boy, girl, bull, cow*, the difference of gender is marked, not by a modification in the *form* of one of the words, but by the use of words wholly unconnected with each other

88 (3) **Gender marked by the Use of Different Words** As examples of these correlatives, or pairs of words not grammatically connected, take the following in addition to those given above —*boar, sow, buck, doe, bullock* or *steer, heifer, colt, filly, drake, duck, earl, countess, drone, queen-bee, gaffer, gammer, gander, goose, hart, roe* or *hind, monk, nun, ram, ewe, sire, dam, wizard, witch, sloven, slut, bachelor, maid* or *spinster*

These words deserve notice

Drake was once *end rake*, the *end* was the significant part, meaning *duck*, as *Ente* does in German to day, and the *rake* was a mere suffix, meaning 'lord' or 'male' Thus two thirds of the important part, the root, have been lost, and one third, a single letter, has been kept, with the whole of the masculine ending It is as if the word *actress* were decapitated and reduced to *tress*

Lord is *loaf-ward*, 'bread guardian' *lady* contains the same root *loaf*, with possibly the word *dig* as a compound element, 'loaf kneader'

Gaffer is a corruption of 'grandfather,' *gammer* of 'grandmother'

Sir=sire=senior, madam=mea domina, 'my lady'

Wizard comes to us from the O French *guiscart*, 'a very wise man,' not from the English *witch*, though both words have originally the same root

Woman=wife+man, not 'wife *of* man,' but 'wife-person'

89 It is evident that in almost all cases the feminine is formed from the masculine In the following words this order is reversed

Bridegroom, the masculine of *bride*, was originally *bryd guma*, or 'bride's man,' in German *brautigam* *Guma* meant 'a man' in Old English

Gander comes from the same root as *goose*, the German for which is *gans* The *d* has crept in between the *n* and the last syllable, as in *tender* and *cinder* (Latin *tener, cineres*)

Widower has been formed from *widow*

Questions

1 Give the feminine form or word corresponding to *mayor, bull-calf, murderer, milkman, ogre, peacock, marquis, testator, czar, sultan, fox, earl*

2 Give the masculine form or word corresponding to *roe, hind, ram, countess, lardlady, doe rabbit, abbess, traitress, margravine, spinster, bride, lass*

3 If we personify the objects indicated by the following names, which of them should we speak of as *she*?—*Earth, Sun, Moon, Night, Death, Love, Nature, Winter, War, Justice, Time, Liberty*

CHAPTER X.

Inflexion of Nouns—II Number

90 Number is an inflexion which shows whether we are speaking of one thing or of more than one

When we speak of one thing, the form of the noun is singular, when of more than one thing, the form of the noun is plural In Greek there was a dual number with separate inflexions, used when two things were spoken of, and English once had a dual number in the personal pronouns But the absence of a dual from modern English is not a matter for regret It is enough to distinguish between one and more than one, to distinguish between one, two, and more than two, is a needless refinement

91 The ways of forming plurals in English nouns are shown in the following classified scheme, which should be learnt by heart —

Table of Plural Forms.

I **Add -s** to the singular

II **Add -es** to the singular of—

1. Nouns ending in a sibilant, viz , *s*, *z*, *sh*, *x*, *ch*
2. Nouns ending in *f* sound, if of English origin and preceded by *l* or by a long vowel, change *f* into *v*
3. Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *i*
4. Some nouns ending in *o*

III Archaic or Old English forms:

{1 Add *en*, *ox en*
{2 Add *-er*, *child (e)r en*
{3 Change the vowel *men*, *geese*

IV Foreign forms

{1 Ancient, *seraphim*, *pheronema*, *appendices*.
{2 Modern, *bas dits*, *mesdames*

92 Remarks on the Table of Plural Forms.

I The ordinary mode of forming a plural in modern English is to add *s* in writing thus a new word like *telephone* or *cablegram* takes *s* If however a word is borrowed directly from a foreign language, it may retain the form of the plural which it had in that foreign language Such a word is then said to be 'imperfectly naturalized', it has not yet become an English subject

Observe however that though we add *s* in writing, we often add *z* in pronunciation We have seen that if a surd *s* is added to a word ending in a sonant, either the inflexion *s* or the last letter of the noun must be altered Both sounds must be sonant or both must be surd, otherwise it is impossible to pronounce them in the same syllable Thus we write *slabs*, *pods*, *hogs*, but we pronounce these words *slabz*, *podz*, *hogz* To pronounce them *slaps*, *pots*, *hocks*, preserving the true sound of the *s*, would be to obscure the nouns themselves

II This inflexion in *s* is a survival of the older form of the plural in *es*

1 The inflexion *es* as a separate syllable is necessarily retained to make the plurals of nouns ending in a sibilant sound For if we add *s* to words with *s*, *z*, *sl*, *x*, or *ch*, for their last letter, such as *gas*, *topaz*, *bush*, *box*, *church*, the *s* thus added cannot be pronounced As we have seen, *x* is an abbreviation of *ks*, so words ending in *x* really end in *s* The *ch* of which we speak here is the *ch* of *arch*, *beech*, and is really a compound of *t+sh*, so the sibilants enumerated above are reducible to three, viz, *s*, *z*, *sh* The *ch* found in the Scotch *loch* takes *s*

2 For the formation of plurals of nouns ending in an *f* sound, it is impossible to state concisely a rule which shall cover all instances The rule, as we have stated it, is rather complicated, yet some words evade it The following nouns illustrate the rule *leaf*, *loaf*, *calf*, *wife*, *wolf*, *self*, for these words are of English origin and the vowel is long, or, if short, the *f* is preceded by *l* On the other hand, the long vowel sound *oo* in *roof*, *hoof*, is not followed by *-ves* these words take *s* *Reef*, *strife*, *fife*, are exceptions also they add *s*, though they are of English

origin and their vowels are long *Brief*, *chief*, *proof*, take *s* conformably with the rule, as they are not of English origin, but come from the French But *beef* is exceptional in making *beeves*, as it is a French word *Wharf*, *dwarf*, *scarf*, *turf*, are found with plurals in both forms, *fs* and *ves*

3 There is hardly anything in the nature of an exception to the rule respecting nouns ending in *y* A word like *soliloquy*, which makes its plural in *ies*, looks as if it were an exception, but it really follows the rule, for the combination *qu* has the force of *kw*, which is a consonantal sound Perhaps the only established exception is *flys*, meaning 'carriages,' and inn-keepers can scarcely be blamed for refraining from advertising '*Flies* on hire' Some words in *ey* are occasionally found with their plural in *ies*, *e g* *monies*, but it is better to spell them according to the rule

4 With regard to nouns in *o*, it is difficult to discover any principle which determines whether their plurals are in *s* or in *es* Many of our words in *o* are of Italian origin, and these take *s*, as do all nouns in *to* The nouns in *o* which take *es* are usually of earlier introduction *Cargo*, *echo*, *hero*, *potato*, *negro*, take *es* *canto*, *solo*, *alto*, *piano*, *folio*, *oratorio*, take *s*

Observation and practice are required to enable us to form the plurals of nouns in *f* or in *o* correctly Rules are of little or no use for the purpose Still it is our business in dealing with grammar to search out the principles, if such there are, on which the rules are based, although the rules when we get them may be insufficient guides

III Old English forms, other than *es* and *s*, which survive in modern English are few

1 *Oxen* is the only modern English word which presents us with the form *en* simply *Chicken* is not a plural form, though it is used as such in country districts *Kine* is a double plural *cow* in Old English modified its vowel to form the plural and became *cy*, as *mouse* becomes *mice*, and the plural inflexion *en* was also added *Swine* however is not the plural of *sow* In Old English several neuter nouns of one syllable, such as *swine*, *sheep*, *deer*, *folk*, underwent no change of their singular form when they were used in the plural number

2 *Child er en* is a double plural, the *er* being one sign of the plural and the *en* another No other word preserves for us the inflexion *er* with a plural force *Brethren* is a double plural, *brother* having already modified its vowel to mark the plural, before *en* was added But the *-r-* in *brethren*, unlike the *r* in *children*, belongs to the original word, and is not an inflexion

3 There are only six nouns, in addition to the double forms mentioned above, which change their vowel to mark the plural *man*, *foot*, *tooth*, *goose*, *mouse*, *louse*.

IV To those who know Latin and Greek, foreign plural forms seldom present any difficulty People who have learnt no Latin sometimes make the plurals of neuter nouns wrong and talk of *animalculæ* or *effluvæ* instead of saying *animalcula* and *effluvia* Most of these nouns from dead languages can now be used with English plural forms we can say *formulas*, *memorandums*, *dogmas*, as well as *formulæ*, *memoranda*, *dogmata* *Cherubim* and *seraphim* are Hebrew plurals, but it is only in the language of religion that we use these forms We speak of babies as 'plump little cherubs,' not 'plump little cherubim,' and say of a chorus of girls that they sing 'like seraphs,' not 'like seraphim' The forms *cherubims*, *seraphims*, are double-plurals

93 The following paragraphs contain illustrations of various kinds of anomaly in the number of nouns *Anomaly* means 'unevenness,' or 'irregularity'

(1) Some nouns are used in the Plural without change of form

The following are examples *deer*, *sheep*, *grouse*, the names of several sorts of *fish*,—*salmon*, *trout*, *cod* also *yoke* ('five *yoke* of oxen'), *brace*, *hundredweight*

(2) Nouns which seem Plural but are really Singular

In the following words, the *s* is not a sign of the plural but is a part of the original word

Alms in O E *aelmesse*, borrowed through the Latin from the Greek root which we preserve in the word '*eleemosynary*'

Eaves in O E *efese*

Riches we took our noun from the French *richesse*, though we had the adjective *rich* in English

Owing to a mistaken notion respecting the *s* in these words, they are treated as plurals 'If riches increase, set not your heart upon *them*'

(3) Some nouns Plural in form are sometimes treated as Singulars

News always takes a singular verb and a singular demonstrative adjective 'This news is not true,' not 'These news are not true' Yet *news* is the plural of *new* just as much as *bona*, 'goods,' is the plural of *bonum*, 'good,' in Latin *Small-pox* is a plural in disguise, for *pox* is really *pocks* we have the singular in *chicken pock* Yet we never use a plural verb with *small-pox*

Tidings, *means*, *amends*, *pains*, *odds*, *wages*, are treated sometimes as singular, sometimes as plural To decide whether we are acting more

in accordance with usage if we regard them as singular or as plural, we should place a verb after them and also observe whether they are more appropriately qualified by *this* or *these*, *much* or *many* Does it sound more natural to say 'This odds is too great,' or 'These odds are too great'? to say 'Much pains has been taken,' or 'Many pains have been taken'? The usage of different people may vary

Mathematics, *physics*, *statics*, and several similar words are plural forms taken from Greek adjectives A century ago they were followed by a verb in the plural, and *politics* continues to take a verb in the plural But, with the exception of the word *politics*, these nouns are now used as singular words

(4) Some nouns change their meaning in the Plural

Domino means 'a mask,' *dominoes* 'a game' *vapour* means 'steam,' *vapours* 'ill humour' *compass* 'a mariner's compass,' *compasses* 'instruments for measuring' *vesper* 'evening,' *vespers* 'evening service' *good* means 'anything good,' *goods* means 'chattels'

(5) A few nouns have two forms of the Plural with different meanings, the ordinary form being plural and the anomalous form having a collective force

Pennies means separate coins, *pence* is collective 'Can you give me six pennies for this sixpence?' *Brother* has the collective plural *brethren*, meaning members of the same community *Die*, 'a stamp,' makes a plural *dies*, 'stamps,' and a collective *dice*, 'cubes' used in gambling *Cloth* makes *cloths*, signifying different kinds or different pieces of cloth, and also *clothes*, the collection of one's garments *Fish* has for its plural *fishes* 'The multitude were fed with a few *fishes*', but for its collective *fish* 'He brought home a large basket of fish' The word *pea* has lost the *s* in the singular by mistake in the French *pois* it is still visible But in its reduced form it has a plural *peas*, 'This pod contains six peas,' and a collective *pease*, as in 'pease pudding'

Index and *genius* have different plural forms, neither of which is however collective *Indexes* means 'more than one table of contents', *geniuses* 'more than one person of genius' But *indices* means certain 'algebraical signs,' and *genii* 'Eastern spirits'

(6) Some nouns have no Plural

This is because their meaning excludes the idea of plurality We saw that abstract nouns, while they remain abstract, cannot be used in the plural Many of these nouns do occur in the plural, but they have then ceased to be abstract and have become concrete general names Observation alone will show us which nouns are used in this double way

and which are not *Hope, hardship, joy, colour*, are abstract nouns which we use as concretes when we speak of *hopes, hardships, joys, colours* On the other hand, *manhood, indolence, goodness, freedom*, are always abstract and singular

We noticed also that though the names of many substances or materials are used in the plural number, signifying different kinds or different portions of the material, there are some names of this description which custom forbids us to use in this way *Granite, gold, potash, bread, hemp*, are never plural The names of some diseases also are always singular, *e g gout, consumption, rheumatism*

(7) Some nouns have no Singular

These nouns denote things composed of separate parts, and the complex character of the object makes the plural form appropriate *E g scissors, tweezers, trousers, entrails*

(8) Plural of Compound nouns.

i When the combination of parts is so complete that we regard the compound as a single word, the sign of the plural is added at the end of the compound, although the last part of the word may be an adjective Thus we say *spoonfuls* when the words form a compound, but *spoons full* when they are taken separately

ii But when the fact of composition is brought prominently before us by hyphens, as in *brother-in law, man-of-war, maid-of-honour, groom of-the-chambers*, the principal noun and not the qualifying adjunct usually takes the inflexion Our practice however in this matter is by no means uniform In spite of the hyphen in *attorney general*, we speak of two *attorney generals*, not *attorneys general*, though these officials are not *generals* but *attorneys* Again, *lady superintendent* becomes *lady superintendents*, not *ladies superintendent*, though the words are unconnected even by a hyphen Notice that the *'s* of the possessive case is added at the end of the compound word Thus we should say 'I have three *brothers-in law*, and I am staying at my eldest *brother-in law's* house'

iii In a very few instances, both parts of the compound take the sign of the plural *men servants, lords justices, knights-templars* We may regard this as apposition

iv In a few instances, in which the noun comes before the adjective, only the noun takes the sign of the plural *courts-martial, knights-errant*

v Nouns compounded with *man* form their plural in *men*, with the exception of *Norman* Notice however that several proper nouns with this ending are not compounds of *man* at all, and their plurals are therefore formed in *s German* probably comes from a Keltic word which signifies 'one who shouts' *Brahman, Ottoman, Turcoman, Mussulman*, are unconnected with *man*

(9) How shall we form the Plural of (*a*) Miss Brown, and of (*b*) Mr Smith?

(*a*) We may say (1) The *Miss Browns*, or (2) The *Misses Brown*, or conceivably, though as a fact we never do say so, (3) The *Misses Browns* The usual form is the first, 'The *Miss Browns*', in which we must regard *Miss-Brown* as a complete compound, like *spoonful*, which takes the sign of the plural at the end The second form, 'The *Misses Brown*', corresponds in its type to *courts martial*, *Miss* being regarded as the noun, and *Brown* dwindling away to an adjective in its force. In the third form, 'The *Misses Browns*', we have a mode of expression analogous to *lords justices*, the two nouns being in apposition and each of them taking the inflection

(*b*) Similarly we may say in practice either 'The Mr Smiths,' or 'The Messrs (Messieurs) Smith' The grammatical justification of these alternative forms the reader can supply for himself

QUESTIONS

1 Write the plurals of *German*, *Dutchman*, *Norman*, *story*, *storey*, *octavo*, *roof*, *reef*, *cuckoo*, *buffalo*, *formula*, *radius*, *crocus*, *datum*, *axis*, *appendix*, *genus*, *series*, *virtuoso*, *criterion*, *madam*, *dilettante*

2 The following nouns have two meanings in the plural but only one in the singular Give their plural meanings —*custom*, *spectacle*, *manner*, *effect*

3 The following nouns vary in meaning according as they are singular or plural What meaning has each of them in the plural? *Salt*, *force*, *iron*, *content*, *draught*, *beef*

4 Greek adjectives supply us with the forms *logic*, *dynamic*, *optic*, *metaphysic*, *rhetoric*, *physic*, *politic* To which of these is an *s* added to make the name of a science?

5 Are the verbs right in these sentences?

The innings *was* finished at six o'clock—A gallows *has* been erected inside the prison—The tidings *are* false—The barracks *has* been burnt down—The odds *is* 7 to 2—The alms *is* distributed on Sunday—A summons *has* been issued

6 State and illustrate the rules for the formation of the plural of compound nouns

7 Form the plural of *pailful*, *forget me not*, *spendthrift*, *lord-lieutenant*, *runaway*, *poet-laureate*, *hanger on*, *maid in waiting*, *will o'-the wisp*, *four in hand*, *valet-de chambre*, *envoy extraordinary*, *minister plenipotentiary*

8 Is there anything wrong in speaking of 'a curious phenomena,' 'two octopi,' or in saying 'A rich strata of gold has been struck'?

CHAPTER XI.

Inflexion of Nouns —III Case

94. If we examine the following sentences, we shall see that they contain various assertions about a thing called a *town*, which stands in different relations to other things called *enemies*, *walls*, or *circumstances* '*The town* admitted *the enemy*' '*The enemy* took *the town*' 'The walls *of the town* were destroyed' 'This circumstance was beneficial *to the town*' 'The enemy were driven away *from the town*' Thus, in the first sentence we say that the town did something to the enemy,—not, of course, the word *town* to the word *enemy*, what occurred was done by a thing to a thing, not by a word to a word In the second, we say that the town occupied a different relation towards the enemy, and the enemy did something to the town Now, when we employ language to record these events,—when we make assertions about these things,—we use **nouns** to name the **things** and **verbs** to make our **statements**, and we may then say that just as the **things stand in different relations to other things and to acts**, so our **nouns stand in different relations to other nouns and to verbs** There is an indefinite number of these relations, expressed in English for the most part by prepositions We can say *in the town*, *through the town*, *across*, *down*, *up*, *over*, *under*, *round the town*, and so on, marking in every instance some fresh relation.

Next let us write these sentences in Latin and notice the different method by which that language represents these various relations *Urbs admisit hostes Hostes ceperunt urbem Moenia urbis diruta sunt Haec res urbi utilis erat Hostes urbe sunt expulsi* Here we find the relations expressed by **inflexions**, whereas in English they were expressed by **prepositions**, or by the **position** of the nouns in the sentence When we said that the town did something to the enemy, we put the word *town* before the verb and the word *enemy* after it, and we reversed their places when we said that the enemy did something to the town But a Roman was not tied down as we are to a fixed order of subject and object in his sentence *urbs* would show itself as subject and *urbem* as object, whatever place they might occupy Again, *urbis*, *urbi*, *urbe*, inflected forms of *urbs*, express the relations of *urbs* to the other words in the sentence, whilst the prepositions *of*, *to*, *from*, express the same relations of *town*

If the student has obtained some notion of the meaning of the word **relation** (which is one of the vaguest words in the language), he will find but little difficulty in what remains to be said on the subject of case

95 Case is the form of a noun, or pronoun, which shows its relation to other words in the sentence

As we have said above, the relations in which a noun can stand are very many, but we do not call the expression of these relations by means of prepositions **cases** if we did, we should have as many cases as we have prepositions It is only when the relation is marked by the **form** of the noun that we can properly speak of case *Urbis*, *urbem*, *urbe*, are cases in Latin *town*, *town's*, are cases in English but *of a town*, *to a town*, *from a town*, are no more cases than *ad urbem*, *ex urbe*, *contra urbem*, are cases

96 **How many cases** have we then in English **nouns and pronouns?**

In answer to this question, let us write out the declension of *town* and *he*

	Sing	*Plur*	*Sing*	*Plur*
Nom	town	towns	he	they
Poss	town's	towns'	his	their
Obj	town	towns	him	them

It is clear that the pronoun *he* is better off than the noun in its supply of case-inflexions *He, his, him,* are three genuine cases, just as much as *urbs, urbis, urbem,* are genuine cases But it is otherwise with the noun *Town,* nominative, is indistinguishable in form from *town,* objective The **form** of the word *town* does not show its relation to the rest of the sentence the **position** of the word, or its **context,** shows its relation We must not however interpret our definition too rigorously If we found ourselves without the means of drawing the fundamental distinction between subject and object, because of the absence of an inflexion, parsing and analysis would be reduced to absurdity The fact is, the definition suits an inflexional language like Latin much better than it suits a non-inflexional language like English Even in Latin there are many nouns in which the strict application of the definition would land us in confusion Neuter nouns of the Fourth Declension, like *cornu,* have an inflexion only in the genitive of the singular number, *cornus* all the other singular forms are the same as the nominative Yet we speak of the accusative, dative, and ablative cases of *cornu,* and in like manner **we speak of the nominative and objective cases of English nouns,** though there is but **one form** to express **two relations**

97 The **Nominative** case is the form of a noun when it stands as **subject** of a verb

'*The town* admitted the enemy'. '*The town* was taken'

In each of these sentences the subject is *town*, though in the first sentence *town* represents the doer of the action, in the second, it stands for the thing to which the action is done

When the noun represents a thing spoken *to*, we may call its case the **Vocative**, or the **Nominative of Address** 'Waiter!' 'Come here, John!' 'O death! O grave!' are examples

The **Objective** case is the form of a noun when it stands as object of a verb, or follows a preposition 'The enemy took *the town*' 'The enemy are in *the town*' *Town* is said to be in the objective case, in the former sentence because it represents the object which the enemy *took*, in the latter because it comes after the preposition *in*

Some verbs take two objects 'Give *me the book*' 'He told *us a story*' 'She taught *him music*' 'Get *them a cab*' In these sentences, *me* = *to me*, *us* = *to us*, *him* = *to him*, *them* = *for them* These words *me*, *us*, *him*, *them*, are called **Indirect** Objects, *book*, *story*, *music*, *cab*, are called **Direct** Objects Formerly a dative case with distinct inflexions was used in English to express Indirect Objects, but through the loss of these distinct inflexions the dative case has been merged in the objective, and we need not employ the fiction of such a form in our language at the present day But we cannot understand the impersonal verbs *methought*, *meseems*, unless we remember that the *me* in these words is a survival of a true dative case

The **Possessive** Case is the form of a noun when it stands for a thing **to which something else belongs or with which it is connected**

The King's crown the King's execution The noun *King* assumes the form *King's* because it stands for a thing (*e g* Charles I or Louis XVI) to which a crown belongs, or with which an execution is connected

This relation may be expressed by the inflexion *'s* or by the preposition *of* We may say *the King's crown, the King's execution*, or *the crown of the King, the execution of the King* The form *King's* is a possessive case the expression *of the King* is no case at all, any more than *to, from, by, with, in, round the King* are cases

The apostrophe before the *s* is no part of the inflexion or case it is merely an orthographical device to show that a letter, *e*, has been thrown out, or turned away (*Apostrophe* means 'a turning away') In *Wednesday* the *e* is still present *Wednes-day = Wodin's day*

98 *Formation of the Possessive case*—To form the possessive case singular add *'s*

To form the possessive case plural add *'s* if the plural does not already end in *s* if it already ends in *s*, add the apostrophe only

So, sing *town, town's*, plur *towns, towns'* Thus in sound *town's, towns, towns'* are indistinguishable But if we add the *'s* to a singular noun ending in the singular in an *s* sound, or sibilant, we pronounce the *'s* as a separate syllable thus *actress's* is pronounced just like *actresses* or *actresses'*

The possessive singular of a noun ending in a sibilant is frequently formed by adding the apostrophe without the *s*, in order to avoid the recurrence of the *s* sound but no hard and fast rule can be laid down We say 'Jesus' brothers,' 'Sophocles' tragedies,' 'for goodness' sake,' 'for conscience' sake' But we more commonly (1) sound the *s* and (2) write either 'St James's Square,' 'Mr Jones's,' 'St Thomas's Hospital,' or 'St James' Square,' 'Mr Jones', 'St Thomas' Hospital'

Compound nouns take the possessive inflexion *s* at the end of the word *son-in law's, man of-war's* When we use several words to form a name, we put the *s* after the last, treating the name as a compound word, though it has no place in the vocabulary as such Thus we say '*The prime minister of England's* residence,' 'I got this at *Marshall and Snelgrove's*,' 'He is in *Price, Waterhouse & Co's* office'

Even nouns in apposition are dealt with in the same fashion When one noun is used to explain another, it is put in the same case, generally in the same number, and if possible in the same gender In the expressions *Queen Victoria, Turner the baker*, the noun *Victoria* explains *queen*, and *baker* explains *Turner* But when we use these expressions in the possessive case, we almost invariably drop the apposition and convert the two nouns into a compound We might indeed say 'This is *Victoria's*, the *queen's*, crown' 'I buy my bread at *Turner's*, the *baker's*, shop' these forms illustrate apposition and are perfectly gram-

matical But as a fact we should all say 'This is *Victoria the queen's* crown,' 'I buy my bread at *Turner the baker's* shop'

The reader may find the following examples of the declension of nouns of some service in recalling to his mind the details contained in this section

	Sing	*Plur*	*Sing*	*Plur.*
Nom Obj	ox	oxen	mouse	mice
Possess	ox's	oxen's	mouse's	mice's

	Sing	*Plur*
Nom Obj	conscience	consciences
Possess	conscience's, *or* conscience'	consciences'

	Sing	*Plur*
Nom Obj	son in law	sons in law
Possess	son in law's	sons in law's

	Sing	*Sing*	*Sing*
Nom Obj	James	Henry VIII	The last of the barons
Possess	James', *or* James's	Henry VIII 's	The last of the barons'

99 Can we always use at pleasure the inflected form of the possessive in *'s* or the preposition *of*?

No a few trials will show that the preposition *of* can always be employed, but that there are narrow limits to the use of *'s* We can say either 'the boy's cap,' or 'the cap of the boy,' 'the horse's bridle,' or 'the bridle of the horse,' 'nature's forces,' or 'the forces of nature,' 'friendship's garland,' or 'the garland of friendship' But we cannot say, 'the ink's colour,' 'grammar's laws,' 'the kettle's lid,' 'the station's platform'

Speaking generally we may say that the inflected form in *'s* is reserved for the names of living things and of personified objects, though our usage does not entirely conform to this principle we use the form in *'s* in such phrases as 'a year's absence,' 'a month's delay,' though there is no personification to justify these idioms

100 A quaint error was formerly prevalent that this *'s* was a corruption of *his* that *John's book* was a degenerate form of *John his book* In the Prayer-Book we find the expression '*Jesus Christ his sake*' Whatever may be the origin of phrases of this form, two considerations disprove the theory that the *'s* of the possessive was a corruption of *his*

1 Old English presents us with the possessive form in *es*, but shows no trace of an original *his* from which it was alleged according to this theory to have been developed

2 How can the *s* of the word *his* itself be explained on this theory? If *s=his*, whence did we get the first *his*?

101 The beginner may find it helpful in determining the case of the nouns in a sentence if he asks the following questions

To discover the—

Nominative, put *who?* or *what?* before the verb 'The enemy took the town' 'Who took the town?' 'The enemy' 'The town was taken by the enemy' 'What was taken?' 'The town'

Objective (*a*) **Direct Object**, put *whom?* or *what?* before the verb and its subject 'The enemy took the town' 'What did the enemy take?' 'The town'

(*b*) **Indirect Object**, put *to* or *for whom* or *what?* 'Give me the book' 'What do you give?' 'The book' this is the direct object 'To whom do you give it?' 'To me' 'Me' is the indirect object

Possessive, look for the sign of inflexion *'s*

QUESTIONS

1 Name the case of each noun in the following sentences — John killed Thomas Thomas was killed by John Thomas, the coachman's brother, was killed by John the gardener Thomas the coachman's brother was killed by John Call me a friend Call me a cab The people chose Balbus consul

2 *Wolsey the chancellor* Preserve the apposition of these nouns and make three sentences in which they occur respectively in the Nominative, Possessive, and Objective cases How should we form the Possessive in common use?

3 Write the possessive case singular and plural, (where the meaning of the noun admits a plural), of *goodness, Socrates, Burns, Debenham and Freebody, his sister Mary, his sisters Mary and Rose, hero, goose, the Prince of Wales, the Duke of Beaufort, child, sheep, footman, Norman, Englishman*

4 Give the feminine of *songster, marquis, beau*, the masculine of *witch, roe, slut*, the plural of *sheep, sheaf, cargo, cameo*

5 How did the termination *es* or *s* come to be the usual mark of the plural in English nouns?

Mention other ways of forming the plural, and give examples

Is there anything anomalous in the use of the words *brethren, riches, chickens*?

[Norman French influence contributed to the general use of *es* or *s* for the formation of plurals in English The sibilant plural suffixes in French, *es, s*, or *z*, owe their origin to the accusative plural forms in *as, os, es*, or *us*, of masculine and feminine nouns in Latin In Old English, nouns had several plural suffixes, the commonest of which was *an*]

6 How does the possessive case differ both in form and in use from the old genitive? State and illustrate the rules for its use in the singular and in the plural

[Our possessive inflexion *'s* has come to us from the Old English termination *es*, which was the genitive ending of some masculine and neuter nouns, but not of feminine nouns, nor of nouns in the plural The *s* in plurals like *oxen's, mice's*, has been attached through the influence of nouns with plurals regularly formed in *s*, as such nouns have the *s* in the possessive, *sons', duchesses'* The uncontracted *es* is still visible in Wedn*es*day and is sounded in many words ending in a sibilant, such as *duchess', Thomas', ass's* One of the old genitive plural endings is preserved in Wit-*ena* gemot, 'meeting of wise men' The absence of the *s* from *Lady day, Friday*, is due to the fact that feminine nouns in Old English did not take this inflexion

The relations expressed by the old genitive were much more numerous than those expressed by the modern possessive The possessive inflexion is now generally limited to names of living beings and of personified objects The preposition *of* enables us to express the relations indicated by the old genitive *e g* partitive relation, 'door of the house,' 'half of his fortune', adjectival relation, 'act of mercy,' 'man of virtue', objective relation, 'love of money'

For a fuller treatment of this question the student may consult Bain's *Higher English Grammar*, pp 79—82, and 135—7]

7 Give the definition and derivation of the word *Case*

How many Cases are there in English? Name them and describe their uses

[The Latin grammarians represented the nominative by a perpendicular and the other cases by lines falling away from it This symbol explains the origin of some of our terms connected with case thus, 'case' itself is from the Latin *casus*, 'a falling' '*oblique* cases' are 'slopings away' from the nominative when we enumerate the cases of a noun, we *decline* it or give its *declension*, that is, its 'fallings']



CHAPTER XII.

ADJECTIVES.

102 An Adjective is a word which is used with a noun to limit its application

The name *sheep* is applicable to all sheep If we join the word *black* to the noun *sheep*, the name *black sheep* is applicable only to those sheep which possess the quality of blackness The application of the name *sheep* has been limited to a smaller number of things In like manner, if we say *some sheep*, *twenty sheep*, or *these sheep*, *those sheep*, we narrow, or restrict, or limit, in every instance the application of the noun We can make this limitation in other ways we can say 'the sheep which won the prize at the show,' or 'the squire's sheep,' restricting the application of the word *sheep* by the use of a subordinate clause, or by the use of a noun in the possessive case But a subordinate clause is not an adjective, though it may be so used as to have the force of an adjective, and *squire's* is a noun in the possessive case, though it limits the application of the word *sheep* like an adjective *Squire* or any other noun in the possessive case does the work of an adjective, but it is only when it is in the possessive case that it performs this function *Squire* is not an adjective, nor is its possessive *squire's* an adjective

103 Adjectives and verbs resemble each other in this respect, that they express attributes or qualities of things, but there is a difference in their way of doing it In the expression 'the prosperous merchant,' prosperity is assumed as an attribute of the merchant in the sentence 'The merchant prospered,' prosperity is declared to be an attribute of the merchant. In the expression 'the victorious army,' the connexion of victory with the army is implied in the sentence 'The army conquered,' this connexion is formally stated So again, when we say 'the black sheep' we assume, or imply, or take for granted the connexion of the attribute blackness with the thing a sheep When we say 'The sheep is black,' we explicitly state this connexion. The word *black* in the former case is said to be used *attributively*, in the latter case *predicatively*, since it forms, together with the verb *is*, the predicate of the sentence

104. Bearing in mind that the function, or special work, of an adjective is to limit the application of a noun, let us arrange adjectives in groups, or classes, according to the kind of limitation which they effect.

Adjectives are
- 1 Qualitative *What sort?* Ans black, good, big
- 2 Quantitative
  - i Definite *How many?* Cardinal Numerals Ans one, eight
  - ii Indefinite *How much? How many?* Ans all, some
- 3 Demonstrative *Which?* Ans this, each, third

This classification is open to criticism, but for practical purposes it will probably serve our ends better than one more exhaustive A few words are required to meet objections and to remove difficulties These questions may be asked —

1 Why are such words as *big, great, large, small,* placed among *qualitative* adjectives? Do they not mark *quantity*?

They mark size, but not amount they indicate the dimensions of the thing, but not how much of it we refer to

2 Where are the Ordinal Numerals, *first, second, third, etc*?

Their place is among the Demonstrative adjectives, which point out a thing by marking its relation to ourselves or to some other thing What is *this* to me is *that* to you, and *vice versâ* A thing is *fifth* in relation to other things which are fourth and sixth The word *fifth* answers the question *Which?* not the questions *How many?* or *How much?*

3 If we say 'blind Milton,' 'patriotic Hampden,' 'the resounding ocean,' do these adjectives limit the application of the nouns?

No, for the nouns already name objects which are single or individual 'Milton' or 'Hampden' is the name of one thing there is only one ocean We must understand these expressions as condensed forms of saying 'Milton who was blind,' 'Hampden who was patriotic,' 'the ocean which is resounding'

4 Why should *all* and *half* be classed as Indefinite?

Because they are clearly lacking in numerical definiteness *All* may be five or fifty the same thing is true of *half* They express a definite proportion, but not a definite number

On the other hand *none* and *both* must be placed amongst the Definite Quantitative Adjectives, for though *all* is Indefinite, since it does not express how many, *none* is as Definite as possible, since it expresses the absence of any *Both*, again, means two, but two taken together

105 The student may find it helpful towards a clear understanding of the classification of adjectives, if he reads the examples given below in their respective groups

1 Adjectives of Quality *thick, wise, sad, tall, magnificent, modern, holy, native, senior*

2 Adjectives of Quantity·

(i) Definite, Cardinal Numerals, *one, two, fifty, no, none, both*

(ii) Indefinite, *many, any, some, all, few, half, several, most*

3 Demonstrative Adjectives.

(i) *A* and *the*

(ii) Pronominal Adjectives of various kinds *this*, *what*, *any*, *each*, *his* These we shall deal with in Chapter XIV

(iii) The Ordinal Numerals, *first*, *twentieth*, *thousandth*

106 Some Adjectives are used as Nouns.

(*a*) 'The *good*, the *true*, the *beautiful*,' may be substituted for 'goodness, truth, beauty' We describe these words as Adjectives employed as Abstract Nouns

(*b*) 'The *wise*,' '*rich* and *poor*,' signify 'wise people,' 'rich and poor people' We describe these words as Adjectives employed as Concrete Nouns

(*c*) Several adjectives have become nouns so completely that they take a plural and a possessive inflexion Thus, we say *Romans*, *Germans* (not however *Frenches* or *Dutches*, probably on euphonic grounds, because of the sibilant ending of the adjective), *Gladstonians*, *Jacobites*, *seniors*, *elders*, *betters*, *ancients*, *blacks*, *whites*, 'form *fours*!' 'things are all *sixes* and *sevens*,' *others*

107. Remarks on the Forms of the Numerals.

1 Cardinals indicate the number of things spoken of They answer the question *How many?*

One appears with a negative prefix in *none*—*no one* in the possessive case as an adverb in *once* as a noun in the plural, 'her little *ones*'

Five has lost before the *v* an *n* which is kept in German *fünf*, Latin *quinque*

Ten supplies the ending *-teen* to numerals from 13 to 19, and *-ty* to multiples of 10 up to 90

Eleven is composed of *e* or *en*, meaning 'one,' (compare German *ein*), and *lev* or *lif* which is really the same as *dec-* in *decem*, the Latin for 'ten,' though its identity is wonderfully disguised Yet we see how *l* can take the place of *d* if we compare 'Odyssey' and 'Ulysses,' and in our pronunciation of *enough*, a guttural *g* has become *f*

Twelve similarly contains *two*+*lev*, *duo*+*decim*, δώ-δεκα Do not suppose however that *eleven* and *twelve* are derived from the Greek or Latin words *eleven* and *twelve* are the forms assumed, among a people of the Teutonic stock, by old Aryan roots which are found in different forms in languages belonging to the other stocks

Dozen is from *douze*, Latin *duodecim* Here on the contrary we have a case of borrowing—from the French

Score is from an Old English word, meaning 'to scratch, or notch' it is used now as a verb signifying 'to keep an account.' As a noun it sometimes means 'twenty,'—perhaps because twenty was the number of notches marked on one tally or stick,—and sometimes means an indefinite number 'He made a good score'

Million is from the Latin *mille*, 'a thousand,' with an augmentative suffix *-on*, signifying 'a big thousand,' just as *balloon* signifies 'a big ball' and *trombone* 'a big trumpet'

2 Ordinals indicate the position in a series of the things spoken of

First is the superlative of *fore*, 'most in front,' the *o* being altered by Umlaut See p 49

Second is from the Latin *secundus*, 'following,' from *sequor*, 'I follow' Our native word was *other*

Third was once *thrid*, retained in the word *Riding*=*Thriding*=*Thirding*, 'a little third,' of Yorkshire This transposition is called metathesis See p 50

It should be noticed that with the exception of the words *second*, *dozen*, *million*, *billion*, &c, our numerals are of English origin

3 Multiplicatives indicate how many times the thing spoken of exceeds some other thing They are formed by adding *-fold* to the Cardinals *e g twentyfold*, *hundredfold*

108 The so-called Articles The words *the* and *an* or *a* are **Demonstrative adjectives** In parsing, we may describe *the* as a demonstrative adjective commonly called the definite article, and *an* or *a* as a demonstrative adjective commonly called the indefinite article

In Old English *the* was a demonstrative pronoun, declined in three genders, singular and plural *That* was its neuter singular

An is another form of the numeral adjective *one* The *n* is thus part of the root We have not added *n* to *a*, but have dropped the *n* before words beginning with a consonantal sound

109 Points of interest connected with the words *the* and *an* or *a* are discussed in the following paragraphs

1 Do *the* and *an* differ so widely from Adjectives as to justify grammarians in regarding them as forming a separate Part of speech?

Let us inquire, first, in what respects they resemble the adjectives *that* and *one*, and secondly, in what respects they differ from the adjectives *that* and *one*

In the first place, what are the points of similarity?

(1) They resemble *that* and *one* in their force 'the book' is a weaker form of 'that book,' 'a book' of 'one book'

(2) They are connected with *that* and *one* in their origin *that* was the neuter of *the*, *an* was the older form of *one*

On the other hand, what are the points of difference?

(1) *That* and *one* are used as adjectives and as pronouns, *the* and *an* are used only as adjectives Thus we can say 'Give me *that* book,' 'Give me *one* book,' using *that* and *one* as adjectives, or we can say 'Give me *that*,' 'Give me *one*,' using *that* and *one* as pronouns or substitutes for nouns But although we can say 'Give me *the* book,' 'Give me *a* book,' using *the* and *a* as adjectives, we cannot say 'Give me *the*,' 'Give me *a*,' using *the* and *a* as pronouns

(2) An ordinary adjective can be used either attributively, as in the expression, 'the black horse,' or predicatively, as in the expression, 'The horse is black' Now the Articles can be used only attributively We can say 'Sovereignty is *one* and indivisible,' but we cannot say 'Sovereignty is *an* and indivisible' We can say 'John is lazy James is *that* also,' but we cannot say 'James is *the* also'

But this restriction about the use of *the* and *an* affords quite insufficient reason for constituting a new Part of Speech which shall consist of these two words For there are other adjectives which do not admit of being used to form predicates We cannot say 'This is *my*, that is *your*,' any more than we can say 'This is *the*, that is *an*' But this peculiarity does not prevent us from calling *my* and *your* adjectives Why then should *the* and *an* be differently regarded?

2 When is *an* used instead of *a*?

Before words beginning with a vowel, or a silent *h*, as in *heir*, *honest*, but words beginning with a *y*, or with a *u* which has the sound of *y* before it, take *a* thus we say '*an* utter failure,' but '*a* useful machine To speak of '*an* university' or '*an* historian' sounds rather pedantic.

3 What are the chief uses of *the*?

(*a*) to point out a thing 'Give me *the* book,—not *the* red one, *the* black one'

(*b*) to specify objects which are well known to us 'Let us have a walk in *the* garden', '*the* village,' '*the* church'

(*c*) to indicate things of which only a single specimen exists '*the* Alps,' '*the* Atlantic,' '*the* Thames' Hence also with superlatives, '*the* meanest of mankind,' '*the* highest point,' as these are singular objects

(*d*) to signify a class, with nouns in the singular number or with adjectives '*the* horse,' '*the* ant', '*the* rich,' '*the* wise'

(*e*) in colloquial language with emphasis on the word *the*, to give the force of a superlative 'Here comes *the* cricketer,' meaning 'the best cricketer'

(*f*) as an adverb with comparatives '*the* more *the* better' This signifies '*by that* much the more *by so* much the better,' like the Latin *quo* and *eo* *The* is here a survival of the Old English ablative or instrumental case, *thi*, from the definite article or demonstrative pronoun *the*

4 What are the chief uses of *an* or *a*?

(*a*) to signify *one* 'three men in *a* boat', 'two of *a* trade' 'In *a* year or two he will come down to *a* shilling *a* day'

(*b*) to signify *any one* 'If *a* body meet *a* body' '*A* horse is a vain thing for safety'

(*c*) to signify *some one*, or *a certain one* '*A* policeman told me there was *a* fire' 'He has *a* great liking for sport'

QUESTIONS

1 Give the derivation and definition of the term adjective

Distinguish the different kinds of adjectives in the sentence —'Every man did that which was right in his own eyes'

Give one example of each kind of adjective not represented in the preceding sentence

[Adjective is from Latin *adjectivum*, 'what can be added on']

2 Distinguish the different kinds of adjectives in the lines

In a corn field this poor child was seen
Impatient her little blue apron to fill
With the few scattered ears she can glean.

3 What is an adjective? Point out the adjectives in the lines.

And his droop'd head sinks gradually low—
And through his side the last drops, ebbing slow
From the red gash, fall heavy, one by one,
Like the first of a thunder shower

4 Is it right to say that an Adjective marks the quality of a *Noun*?

5 Distinguish between the use of the Definite and of the Indefinite Article Explain the use of the Article in '*a* burnt child shuns *the* fire,' 'twice *a* day,' '*the* red flag'

[Note here that we might have expected '*a* fire' rather than '*the* fire,' as a burnt child shuns not only the fire at which it was once burnt, but any fire

In 'twice *a* day,' although *a* has the form of the article now, it is a corruption of the preposition *on*, meaning *in*]

6 Give examples of adjectives that are capable of being used substantively.

CHAPTER XIII

Inflexion of Adjectives

110 One result which the Norman Conquest produced upon our language was this the inflexions marking gender and case disappeared from our adjectives and, with the exception of *these* and *those*, the plurals of *this* and *that*, the inflexions marking number followed them The adjective in English is thus in striking contrast with the adjective in Greek, or Latin, or German In these languages the adjective is declined with us it is invariable as regards gender, number, and case Thus the **only inflexion of adjectives** which survives in modern English is that of **Comparison**

111 What do we mean by the **Comparison of Adjectives?**

We saw that adjectives might be classified in three groups as Qualitative, Quantitative, or Demonstrative A qualitative adjective indicates the presence of some quality in the thing of which we are speaking If we say 'The sheep is black,' we assert that the sheep has the quality called *blackness*, or in other words that blackness is an attribute of the sheep Now many qualities are variable in the amount or degree in which they are present Blackness admits of different shades height, weight, speed, cleverness, are qualities which admit of far greater differences of degree than blackness We observe the varying extent to which

these different qualities are presented to us by making a comparison of the objects, and we record the results of our observation by modifying the adjectives which are attached to the names of these objects This modification is called Comparison of Adjectives

An Adjective in the Positive Degree expresses the presence of a quality without reference to the extent to which that quality is present in something else

An Adjective in the Comparative Degree expresses the presence of a quality to a greater extent than that to which it is present in something else, or in the same thing under other circumstances

An Adjective in the Superlative Degree expresses the presence of a quality to a greater extent than that to which it is present in anything else with which we make the contrast

Thus we say 'John is younger but taller than his brother Mary is the cleverest of the three children'

112 Do all Adjectives admit of Comparison?

Clearly not The **Demonstrative** Adjectives,—*this, that, a, the, first, second,*—express no quality which varies in amount Then again of the **Quantitative** Adjectives, those which are *definite,* like the Cardinal Numerals and *none, both,* have meanings which do not admit of variations of degree And it is only a few of the indefinite adjectives of quantity which admit of comparison We can compare *many, much, little, few,* but not *any, all, some, half, several*

Nor is it possible to form comparatives of all even of the **Qualitative** Adjectives for—

(1) The adjective in the positive degree may already express the presence of the quality in the greatest conceivable extent thus, *extreme, universal, full, empty, top, infinite, perfect,* if literally used cannot be compared When we say 'This glass is *emptier* than that,' 'Yours is a more

perfect specimen,' we are evidently employing the words *empty* and *perfect* in an inexact sense

(ii) The adjective may denote the presence of a quality which does not vary in its amount e g *wooden, circular, monthly, English*

113 Formation of Comparatives and Superlatives There are two ways of forming the degrees of comparison

1 Add to the Positive *-er* to form the comparative and *-est* to form the superlative, in the case of all words of one syllable and some words of two syllables, especially those in *-er, -le, -y*, as *clever, able, merry*

2. Use the adverbs *more, most* before the Positive

The substitution of *more* and *most* for the inflexional forms *-er* and *-est* began through Norman French influence, but has been extended during the last two centuries on the grounds of euphony Such forms as *honourablest, ancienter, virtuousest*, are not only disagreeable to the ear but also awkward to pronounce

Notice the following changes of spelling when the inflexions marking comparison are added

i If the positive ends in *-e*, cut off the *-e* e g *grave r, large r*

ii If in *y*, change the *y* to *i* if a consonant precedes, as *drier, merrier*, but retain the *y* if a vowel precedes, as *gayer, greyer* (This is similar to the rule determining the spelling of plurals of nouns in *-y*) Note that the adjective *shy* keeps the *y*

iii Monosyllabic words ending in a consonant preceded by a short vowel double the consonant to show that the vowel is short *hotter, thinner, reddei* A few other adjectives, not monosyllabic, exhibit the same orthographical change *crueller, hopefuller*

114. The following comparisons are **irregular**, that is to say, they do not conform to the general rules stated above, in many instances deficiencies have been supplied by borrowing words from other adjectives defect is one kind of irregularity

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
Good	better	best
Bad	worse	worst
Little	less	least
Much, many	more	most
Nigh	nigher	nighest, next
Near	nearer	nearest
Fore	former	foremost, first
Far	further	furthest
[Forth]	further	furthest
Late	later, latter	latest, last
Old	older, elder	oldest, eldest
Hind	hinder	hindmost, hindermost
[In]	inner	inmost, innermost
[Out]	outer, utter	utmost, uttermost
[Up]	upper	upmost, uppermost
Rathe	[rather]	

The positive forms in brackets are adverbs corresponding adjectives exist only in the comparative and superlative

115 Remarks on the Irregular Comparative Forms.

Better comes from a root which we have in the words *bootless*, meaning 'of no good', *booty*, *to boot*, meaning 'to the good.' *Best*= *bet est*

Worse comes from the Old Eng *weor*, 'bad,' with the comparative in *s* instead of *r*, *weor se* for *weor er* Or *worse* may be itself a positive, in which case the right comparative would be *worser*, which still occurs

Less, *least* are from *las*, meaning 'weak,' in Old Eng These forms do not come from *little*

More occurs abridged as *moe* in Elizabethan writers

Near is really the comparative of *nigh* the *r* is the sign of comparison so *nearer* is a double comparative In Old Eng the positive was *neah*

Last is from *latest*, as *best* from *betest* We use *latter* and *last* of order in a series, *later* and *latest* of time

Elder, *eldest* show a modification of the vowel of the positive which is common in German comparative forms With reference to the double set of forms, *elder*, *eldest*, *older*, *oldest*, observe that (1) *elder* is no longer used to express comparison with *than* we cannot say 'He is elder than his brother' (2) the use of *elder* is restricted to persons we cannot say 'This is the elder of the two horses ' (3) *elder* can be used as a substantive, 'Respect your *elders* ' *older* is always an adjective

Rathe as a positive adjective meant 'early' Milton speaks of 'the *rathe* primrose' We preserve only the comparative *rather*, which we use as an adverb 'I would *rather* go'=I would *sooner* go than not go, if I had the choice

Hindmost, inmost, utmost, etc These words in *-most* require particular attention At first sight one would naturally suppose them to be compounds of *most*, as this explanation would exactly suit their meaning as superlatives But we can trace their forms back to an earlier period of the language and satisfy ourselves that they did not arise by the combination of *most* and *hind*, *most* and *in*, etc In Old English, several adjectives, which have comparatives and superlatives formed from adverbs, contain the letter *m* which was a superlative suffix To this was added the superlative ending *-est*, making *mest*, which was confounded with *most* Thus these words are really double superlatives (But *most* the superlative of *much* is not formed in this way It is derived from a positive root *mah*, meaning 'great,' by adding *st*)

Foremost is really a double superlative of *fore*, containing the two superlative inflexions *m* and *st* But the fact that the *-m-* represented an earlier superlative suffix was forgotten, and from *forem ost*, as if it were a simple superlative, the comparative *form-er* was coined Hence the word *former* breaks up into these elements, root *fore*, superlative suffix *m*, comparative suffix *er*

First represents the superlative of *fore*, *fore st*, the vowel of the root being changed by Umlaut

Further is a comparative of *fore*, formed by adding a comparative suffix *-ther* It was wrongly looked upon as a comparative of *forth* to which the regular comparative ending *er* had been added, and, owing to this mistaken notion, the *th* was retained in the superlative *furth est*

Farther and *further* are used indiscriminately now, but their meanings were originally different, *farther* meant 'more distant, more far away,' *further*, 'more in front, more to the fore' Yet we see no contradiction at the present day in saying 'Stand further off,' 'He is coming farther this way'

Hind occurs as an adjective in 'the *hind* quarter,' '*hind* wheel'

Utter is used as a comparative in the law-courts in the phrase 'the *utter* bar,' in contrast with the 'inner bar'

116 **Examples of Double Comparatives** are seen in *near er, lesser, worser* examples of **Double Superlatives** in *foremost, inmost, upmost*, etc Such expressions as *more better, more braver, most worst, most unkindest* are frequently met with in Shakespeare and other Elizabethan writers When we use such expressions as *chiefest* or *most universal*, we are employing adjectives which are double superlatives

in meaning though not in form But this arises from our laxity in the choice of words we use *chief* as if it meant the same as *important*, and *universal* as if it meant the same as *general*

117 Superlatives are sometimes employed to denote the presence of a quality in a high degree, without any suggestion of comparison When a mother writes to her son as 'My dearest boy,' she does not mean that his brothers occupy a lower place in her affections. 'dearest' signifies in such a case 'very dear'

118 There are some comparative adjectives which we cannot use with *than* Thus the following adjectives which have been borrowed directly from the Latin in the comparative form do not admit *than* after them *senior*, *junior*, *exterior*, (which take *to* after them), *major*, *minor*, *interior* The following adjectives of English origin have the same characteristic, *elder*, *inner*, *outer*, *latter* We can say *older than*, *later than*, but not *elder than*, *latter than*

Questions

1. Adjectives of two syllables having certain terminations may be compared without the use of *more* and *most* Specify three of these terminations, and mention adjectives which contain them

2 Give the comparative and superlative degrees of *sad*, *gay*, *free*, *nigh*, *bad*, *old*, *hateful*, *happy*, *out*, *away*, *fore*, *late*, *sly*, *holy*, *far*, *virtuous*

3 Make sentences which illustrate the difference in our use of *oldest*, *eldest*, *latest*, *last*, *nearest*, *next*, *farthest*, *furthest*

4 Point out the difference in meaning between (*a*) 'later' and 'latter,' (*b*) 'elder' and 'older,' (*c*) 'further' and 'farther'

Account for the presence of the *th* in 'further' and in 'farther.'

CHAPTER XIV

PRONOUNS

119 A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun

The definition of a Pronoun is usually stated in this form It has the merit of being short and easily understood, and it calls attention to an important function which most Pronouns perform, namely, that of saving the repetition of the noun Thus, if no pronouns existed, instead of saying 'John gave Mary a watch on *her* birthday, and *she* lost *it*,' we should have to say 'John gave Mary a watch on *Mary's* birthday, and *Mary* lost the *watch*'

120 But have all pronouns this property of serving as substitutes for nouns?

A good deal of ingenuity must be exercised if we are to bring within the scope of the definition (1) the Personal Pronouns of the First and Second Persons, and (2) the Interrogative Pronouns

(1) For if the pronouns *I* and *you* were abolished, and nouns were put in their place, we should have to recast our sentences entirely and *make all our statements in the third person*

(2) Again, when we ask '*Who* broke the window?' what is the noun for which we are to say that the pronoun *Who* serves as substitute? We must maintain that the pronoun *Who* here stands for the noun which the answer supplies, but this seems rather far-fetched. For suppose that the reply to the question is not 'Brown,' nor 'the boy,' but 'I don't know,' where is the noun?

The characteristic feature of Pronouns is rather this —Pronouns are

names of things only in relation to other things According to circumstances, *I*, *you*, *he*, *this*, *that*, *either*, can be applied to any objects *I* means Jones when Jones speaks, Zeus when Zeus speaks, a ghost when a ghost speaks, but *horse* is the invariable name of things belonging to a particular class and of those things only In certain situations anything can be *I*, *you*, or *he*, but only one set of things can be *horses* This is the essential peculiarity which distinguishes pronouns from nouns,—their capacity for universal application

121 Pronouns are of different kinds (1) Some are used exclusively as substitutes for nouns (2) Others are used both as substitutes for nouns and as adjectives limiting nouns (3) A few so-called pronouns are used only as adjectives, but they are usually dealt with under the head of pronouns because they are connected with pronouns in their origin Thus (1) *he* and *who* are used only as nouns (2) *That* and *what* are used both as nouns and as adjectives In the sentence, 'I like *that* book,' *that* is an adjective in 'I like *that*,' it is a substitute for a noun, (though we might also regard it as an adjective with a noun understood, just as we understand the noun 'horse' to be implied with the adjective 'black' in the sentence 'I like the white horse better than the *black*') In the sentence '*What* did he do?' *what* is a noun in '*What* work did he do?' it is an adjective limiting the meaning of *work* On the other hand, *he* or *who* cannot be used as an adjective to limit the meaning of a noun We cannot say 'He man' or 'Who boy.' In such expressions as 'I, the master,' 'You, the pupil,' 'He, John,' we have a noun in apposition with the pronoun *John* explains *he*, *he* does not limit the application of *John* Lastly (3) some words treated of under the head of pronouns are purely adjectival in their use and cannot be employed without a noun We can say 'This is *my* book,' but not 'This is *my*'

Basing our classification on their capacity for being used (1) exclusively as true pronouns, *i e* as substitutes for nouns,

or (ii) as pronouns and also as adjectives, we arrange these words in the following groups

TABLE OF PRONOUNS

	Used only as Nouns	*Used as Adjectives also*
I	PERSONAL—I, we thou, you, ye	
II	DEMONSTRATIVE—he, she, it, they	this, these, that, those
III	REFLEXIVE—myself, yourself, himself	
IV	RELATIVE—that, who	what, which
V	INTERROGATIVE—who	what, which
VI	INDEFINITE — anybody, anything, aught, naught, somebody, something, nobody, nothing	one, any, certain, other, some
VII	DISTRIBUTIVE	each, every, either, neither

Used only as Adjectives

VIII POSSESSIVE—my, our, thy, your, her, its, their

The Possessives *ours*, *yours*, *hers*, *theirs*, are used when no noun follows them, and in this respect they resemble nouns, but their force is purely adjectival The same remarks apply to *mine* and *thine* in modern diction *His* admits of use either with or without a noun following

The Distributive pronoun *every* is now used only as an adjective, except occasionally in legal phraseology

122 Definitions of the different kinds of Pronouns

1 **Personal**

The Pronoun of the First Person is used in the singular to denote the speaker alone and in the plural to denote the speaker and others with whom he is associated

The Pronoun of the Second Person is used of the person or persons addressed

2 A **Demonstrative** Pronoun is one which points out a thing

3 A **Reflexive** Pronoun denotes the object of an action when the object is the same as the doer of the action

4 A **Relative** Pronoun is one which refers to some other noun or pronoun and has the force of a conjunction

5 An **Interrogative** Pronoun is one by means of which we ask a question

6 An **Indefinite** Pronoun is one which does not point out precisely the object to which it refers

7 A **Distributive** Pronoun is used when there are more things than one, to denote that the things are taken separately

8 A **Possessive** Pronominal Adjective denotes that the noun which it limits is the name of a thing belonging to some other thing

With the exception of the word Relative, the adjectives by which the kinds of pronouns are described convey a clearer notion of their characteristic features than these definitions will afford The student should carefully notice the examples of pronouns given in the Table under their respective heads and observe the appropriateness of the names by which the various classes are distinguished

We will now consider the different classes in detail.

123 I The **Pronouns** of the **First, Second,** and **Third Persons** are declined thus:

	Pronoun of 1st Person		*Pronoun of 2nd Person*		*Pronoun of 3rd Person*			
					Sing			*Plu*
	Sing	*Plur*	*Sing*	*Plur.*	*M*	*F*	*N*	
Nom	I	we	thou	ye, you	he	she	it	they
Obj	me	us	thee	ye, you	him	her	it	them
Possess	my	our	thy	your	his	her	its	their
	mine	ours	thine	yours		hers		theirs

124. Remarks on these Pronouns.

(1) There cannot be a plural of *I* at all, strictly speaking *We* does not mean *I* + *I*, as *horses* means *horse* + *horse* there is in the nature of things for each of us only one *I* *We* signifies really *I* + *you*, or *I* + *they*

(2) Why should the pronouns denoting the 1st and the 2nd Person have no distinctions of Gender, while the pronoun denoting the 3rd Person possesses a set of inflexions to mark Gender?

Because when *I* am addressing *you*, our sex is not a matter of doubt, as we are both of us present, but when we are speaking of a third thing, it is desirable for greater

certainty to indicate whether it possesses sex or not, and what sex, as it may be absent.

(3) The Pronoun of the Third Person is sometimes called a Personal pronoun, but it is better to class it with the Demonstratives *She* was not originally the feminine of *he* *she* was the feminine of the Old English definite article or demonstrative adjective, which supplied us also with our forms of the plural number, *they*, *their*, *them*[1]

The *t* in *it* is a sign of the neuter, like the *d* in *illud* *Its* is a modern word, occurring rarely in Shakespeare, at the beginning of the 17th century, and frequently in Dryden, at the end of it. It appears once in the Authorized Version of the Bible (*Levit* xxv 5) as it is now printed, but not in the original edition of 1611 *His* was formerly the genitive case of both *he* and *it* 'If the salt have lost *his* savour'

(4) The forms of these Pronouns in the Possessive case are used no longer as Personal Pronouns, but only as Possessive Adjectives Thus *my* and *thy* are equivalents of the Latin *meus* and *tuus*, not of *mei* and *tui* *Pars mei* must be rendered 'a part of me,' not 'my part,' 'forgetfulness of you' is not expressed by saying 'your forgetfulness,' nor 'envy of them' by saying 'their envy' This is the reason why we have enclosed these forms in brackets they belong to the Personal Pronouns by origin, but have become purely adjectival in force

(5) *Thou* is used only in addressing God and in the flights of poetry or rhetoric But half a century ago the Quakers employed *thou* and *thee* in ordinary speech In the Elizabethan age *thou* and *thee* expressed affection or

[1] In Old English the Pronoun of the Third Person was declined in the nominative case thus masc *he*, fem *heo*, neut *hit* Of these forms we have retained *he* and (*h*)*it*, but have borrowed the feminine *she* from the feminine *seo* of the Demonstrative, masc *se*, fem *seo*, neut *þæt* ('that') The colloquial '*em*, as in 'Give it 'em,' is a survival of *hem*, the old dative plural of *he*, not a corruption of *them*

contempt, as is the case with *tu* in French and *du* in German to day The plural *you* is now used exclusively, whether we are addressing several individuals or only one Sovereigns adopt this plural style in their manifestoes when speaking of themselves and say 'We' for 'I' Editors of newspapers express their opinions in the same fashion, frequently with effects which are droll rather than impressive

In an older stage of our language, *ye* was reserved for the nominative and *you* for the objective '*Ye* have not chosen me, but I have chosen *you*' *Ye* occurs now only in the diction of poetry

(6) The dative *me* survives in *methinks*, *mescems*, 'woe is *me*,' and as the indirect object, *e g* 'do *me* a service', here *me* is equivalent to 'for me' or 'to me'

125 II Demonstrative Pronouns.

This and *that* are employed to denote the latter and the former, like the Latin *hic* and *ille*,—*this* the one nearer to us, *that* the one farther away

That is by origin the neuter of the definite article or demonstrative adjective the *t* is a sign of gender as in *it* and *what*

Those is used as the plural of *that*, *these* as the plural of *this* *these* and *those* are really forms of the plural of *this*

126 III Reflexive Pronouns.

Myself, *ourselves*, *yourself*, *yourselves*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*, *oneself*

(1) 'Take care of yourself,' 'They killed themselves' In such sentences we have the *reflexive* use of these pronouns the action performed by the doer passes back to him, so both the subject and the object of the sentence stand for the same person

(2) 'Take care yourself,' 'They themselves killed it' In such sentences we have the *emphatic* use of these pronouns there is nothing reflexive in their meaning here

127 The compounds of *self* present difficult problems which are rendered still more obscure by research into their forms at earlier stages of the language Let us take the words *myself*, *ourselves*, *himself*, and *themselves*, and see if, keeping our heads clear of historical details, we can give a satisfactory account of the words as they exist to day

In the first place, what part of speech is *self*?

A noun we speak of 'love of *self*', 'a sacrifice of *self*', we say '*Self* makes demands on one's time' Nouns take inflexions to mark the plural, *self* becomes *selves* Nouns are limited in application by adjectives *my* and *our* are possessive adjectives There is no particular difficulty in understanding how the word *myself* came to be used both for reflexive and for emphatic purposes If *self* means 'one's own person,' 'I myself did it' is a way of saying 'I did it of my own person' 'I hurt myself' is a way of saying 'I hurt my own person' Thus far all is fairly simple

But then by analogy we should expect the forms *hisself* and *theirselves* Is there any way of explaining the forms *himself* and *themselves*?

In the first place, *self* must still be regarded as a noun, for it forms a plural *selves* In the second place, *him* and *them* are pronouns, or the equivalents of nouns, in the objective case Now the relation of the nouns *him* and *self*, *them* and *selves*, not being one of dependence, (for if it were, one of the words would be in the possessive case, which it is not), must be one of apposition Therefore the entire words must be composed of two nouns in the objective case standing in apposition And this explanation fits in very well with the reflexive use of *himself*, *themselves*, 'He struck *himself*,' 'They hurt *themselves*,' where nouns in the objective case are required But then we can also say emphatically 'He *himself* did it,' 'They *themselves* said so,' using *himself* and *themselves* as subjects Here the explanation breaks down We can assume, if we like, that people lost sight of the original objective force of these words and came to use them as nominatives, just as we use *me* as a nominative, when we say 'It's *me*'

Applying these conclusions to the forms *one's self* and *oneself* we may say that both can be justified the former shows us *one's* in a relation of dependence on the noun *self*, and therefore in the possessive case, the latter exhibits the two words *one* and *self* in apposition

This is the simplest explanation which we can offer of these compounds of *self*, as we find them existing now The reader must not suppose however that the earlier history of these obscure forms affords any foundation for this mode of treating them

128 IV Relative Pronouns.

The characteristic feature of the Relative Pronouns is this they have the force of conjunctions Thus, the sentence 'I met the policeman *who* said there was a disturbance' contains two sentences rolled into one· 'I met the policeman He told me there was a disturbance' 'This is the book *that* you lent me' may be resolved into 'This is the book. You lent it me' The name *relative* is not a happy one, as it does not call attention to this connective function These pronouns might more appropriately be called conjunctive or connective pronouns Several other pronouns might with equal reason be called relative in this sense, that they relate or refer to an antecedent thus, in the sentences 'I saw John . he was looking very well,' 'Here are your pens . they are all broken,' *he* refers to *John*, and *they* refers to *pens*, but *he* and *they* have no power to unite the sentences in which they occur with the sentences which precede them this power belongs to the so-called Relative Pronouns alone If we substitute *who* and *which* for *he* and *they*, the two sentences become in each case a single sentence: 'I saw John *who* was looking well,' 'Here are your pens *which* are all broken'. The name Relative Pronoun is established too securely among grammatical terms, however, to allow us to replace it by another more suitable word the student must therefore pay particular attention to the concluding part of the definition of a Relative Pronoun as one which refers to some other noun or pronoun and *has the force of a conjunction*

The noun or pronoun to which the Relative refers is called the antecedent, *i.e* that which goes before The relative usually comes after the noun or pronoun to which it refers, but the order of the clauses containing the relative and antecedent is sometimes inverted Thus 'Whom I honour, him I trust' is equivalent to 'I trust him whom

I honour ' *him* is the antecedent, though the relative *whom* precedes it

The relative is often omitted when, if expressed, it would be in the objective case Thus 'The man I met told me so' is an elliptical form of expression for 'The man whom I met,' 'I have lost the book you lent me' is elliptical for 'the book which you lent me' Similarly, 'the man you gave it to' is a condensed way of saying 'the man whom you gave it to', or 'the man to whom you gave it', 'the book I asked for' represents 'the book which I asked for', or 'the book for which I asked', 'the day I came' stands for 'the day which I came on', or 'the day on which I came' But this omission of the relative can occur only when the relative is in the objective case we cannot suppress the relative, if it is in the nominative or possessive Thus from the sentence 'The man *who* met me told me so' we cannot leave out *who*, nor from the sentence 'The man *whose* horse ran away was thrown off' can we leave out *whose*

The antecedent is sometimes omitted Thus we may say 'Who breaks, pays' When *what* is used as a relative, the antecedent is always omitted 'I understand *what* you mean' It is contrary to modern idiom to insert *that* in such a sentence before *what*

The Relative Pronouns are *that*, *who*, *what*, *which*, *as* As a relative, *that* is always used as a noun Beginners who find it puzzling to determine whether, in any sentence, *that* is a Demonstrative or a Relative, may find help in applying tests such as these (1) Try *who*, *whom*, and *which*, and notice whether by the use of any of these words the sense is preserved If so, *that* is a Relative. Thus 'The man *that* met me,' 'The man *that* I met,' 'The man *that* I spoke to,' might be expressed with *who* in the first sentence, *whom* in the second and third (2) Try *this* instead of *that* if sense is made, though not precisely the same sense, *that* is a Demonstrative Thus in the sentence 'Lend me *that*

book *that* is the only one *that* I haven't read,' the reader will be able to identify the first *that* as a demonstrative adjective limiting the noun book, the second *that* as a demonstrative pronoun, and the third *that* as a relative It is true that the substitution of *which* for the second *that* would still make sense, and the application of the first of our two tests might therefore lead to the mistaken description of this word as a relative But this error will be corrected by the use of the second test which shows that *this* can replace *that*. The difficulty of identifying *that* is increased by the fact that it is also a conjunction If we meet with *that* in a context where *who*, *whom*, and *this*, will none of them make sense as its substitute, the word must be a conjunction The reader can experiment upon the sentences 'He said *that* you were here,' 'I work *that* I may live.'

129 V. The following are both **Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.**

Who is used only as a noun we cannot say *who man* It has three cases, *who*, *whom*, *whose*, in singular and plural

What is the neuter of *who* and can be used both as noun and adjective. *What* is used as an Interrogative in '*What* did he say?' Here it has the force of a noun '*What* remark did he make?' Here it is adjectival It is used as a Relative in 'I don't know *what* he said' Here it has the force of a noun 'I don't know *what* remark he made.' Here it is adjectival

What is not declined When used as a noun it is neuter, but as an interrogative adjective it can be used with names of persons 'What man, what woman, what child would believe this statement?'

Which is a compound equivalent to *whom+like*, as *such* is a compound of *so+like*. It can be used as noun or adjective, both as Interrogative and as Relative. '*Which* will you

have?' '*Which* book will you have?' 'I know *which* I will have,' 'I know *which* book I will have'

There is a slight difference in our use of *which* and of *who* or *what* as interrogatives *Which* implies that the choice is restricted to a known group of things Thus we say '*What* shall we have for dinner?' when the selection is unlimited, but 'There's only turbot or salmon to day, *which* shall we have?' as the selection is to be made from a definite number

Which as a Relative pronoun is no longer used of persons, though it was so used formerly *e g* 'Our Father, *which* art in heaven'

From *who*, *what*, *which*, we have formed compound relatives *whosoever*, *whichsoever*, *whatsoever* *Whosoever* is declined as follows

Nom *whosoever*, Obj *whomsoever*, Possess *whosesoever*

130 The differences in our use of *that* and of *who* or *which* as relative pronouns must be carefully noted

(1) *That* is used of persons and things, whilst *who* is used of persons only and *which* of things

(2) *That* cannot follow a preposition if *that* is used as the relative, the preposition is tacked on at the end of the sentence Thus 'The man *in whom* I trusted' becomes 'The man *that* I trusted *in*,' 'The house *of which* you told me' becomes 'The house *that* you told me *of*,' 'The means *by which* he did it' becomes 'The means *that* he did it *by*'

(3) *That* has a restrictive force which renders it unsuitable sometimes as the substitute for *who* or *which* I can say 'My sister *that* is abroad is ill,' because I may have several sisters, and the clause introduced by *that* limits the application of the noun to one of the number But I cannot say 'My mother *that* is abroad is ill,' because the restrictive *that* would suggest that I have more mothers

than one, which is absurd I must say 'My mother *who* is abroad,' which signifies 'My mother, and she is abroad,' the word *who* having a coordinating force in uniting two coordinate statements, 'My mother is ill,' 'My mother is abroad'

131 *As* and *But* occur with the force of Relative Pronouns

As is the correlative of *same* and *such* 'Mine is not the same *as* yours,' 'His behaviour is not such *as* will secure for him many friends' We still hear *as* used for *whom* or *that* in rural districts 'The man *as* I saw,' 'The man *as* told me' These are vulgarisms now, but they were good English once *As* is entitled to a place among the relative pronouns

But has the force of a relative pronoun in certain negative constructions Thus in 'There is nobody *but* thinks you mad,' '*but* thinks' means 'who does not think' in 'Who is there *but* hopes for happiness?' '*but* hopes' means 'who does not hope' We are not however to call *but* a relative pronoun here, though it serves as the substitute for one it is a conjunction, and there is an ellipsis of a pronoun which should follow it 'There is nobody but *he* thinks you mad,' 'Who is there but *he* hopes for happiness?'

132 VI Indefinite Pronouns.

One is an indefinite pronoun it is used vaguely, referring not to any particular individual, but to persons or things generally '*One* hears strange rumours of a rupture in the party.' It has a possessive case, *one's* '*One* must be sure of *one's* ground' Two views have been held respecting the origin of this word (1) that it is simply the cardinal numeral, used as a pronoun, this is probably the right view (2) that it is from French *on*, as in '*on* dit,' '*one* says,' where *on* = *homme* = Latin *homo*, 'man,' just as in German we have the equivalent expression '*man* sagt' *One* has the meaning 'a certain' in such expressions as '*one* Simon a tanner'

Any contains the numeral *one* in its root *an*

Aught contains the word *whit*,—preserved in our expressions 'not one whit,' 'not a whit,'—meaning 'thing'

Naught is 'ne + aught,' of which the adverb *not* is merely a shortened form

133 VII Distributive Pronouns.

Each is a corruption of 'ever-like' It can be used both as noun and as adjective 'Give one to *each*,' 'Give one to *each* boy'

Every is a corruption of 'ever-each,' and is used only when more than two are referred to It is not employed in modern English as a noun, but must always be followed by a noun

Either contains as its elements 'aye-whether' in its constituent part *whether*, the suffix *-ther* marks duality or comparison, as in *other*, *further*. *Either* means 'one of two,' but sometimes occurs with the meaning 'each of two,' *e g* 'on *either* side of the river was there the tree of life' (Rev xxii 2) Its negative is *neither*

Each other and *one another* are used after a transitive verb to express reciprocity of the action When we say 'They hate *each other*,' we mean that the feeling is mutual *Each other* is used of two agents and objects, *one another* of more than two The construction of the two parts of these compound expressions is different *each* and *one* stand for the agents or subjects, *other* and *another* for the objects, thus—

'They hate each (*subject*) the other (*object*),'

'They hate one (*subject*) another (*object*),'

each and *one* being in apposition with the subject *they* But the grammatical relation of these Reciprocal Pronouns has been lost sight of in common use. If we still recognised their original construction, we should say 'They gave a present each to the other,' or 'one to another,' instead of saying, as we do, 'They gave a present to each other,' or 'They gave presents to one another'

134. VIII Possessive Pronouns.

The forms *my*, *thy*, *its*, were dealt with when we discussed the pronouns of the First, Second, and Third Persons *Mine* and *thine* contain a genitive inflexion *n* this *n* has been dropped in *my* and *thy*, which are shortened forms of *mine* and *thine*, just as *a* is a shortened form of *an* The *r* in *our*, *your*, *their*, is a genitive plural inflexion

Our, *your*, *their*, *her*, give rise to secondary forms *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, *hers*, containing *s* which was originally an inflexion of the genitive singular only They are thus double genitive forms, just as *children* is a double plural, *nearer* a double comparative, and *inmost* a double superlative

The Possessives fall into two groups

My, *thy*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your*, *their*, are used only as attributive adjectives they require a noun immediately following them *Mine*, *thine*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, are used only as possessive pronouns the noun which they limit does not follow them

His is used both as possessive adjective and as possessive pronoun

Thus we say 'Give me *my* book and take *yours*,' not 'Give me *mine* book and take *your*' But we say 'This is *his* book' and 'This book is *his*'

In the diction of poetry, *mine* and *thine* occur with nouns following them, if the nouns begin with a vowel sound '*mine* eye,' '*mine* ear,' '*thine* honour'

135 Before leaving the subject of Pronouns, the reader should notice how inflexions, which have disappeared from nouns and adjectives, have survived in words belonging to this part of speech *Hi-m* preserves the form of the dative singular, *the-m* the form of the dative plural, the *r* in *our*, *your*, *her*, is a sign of the genitive, the *t* in *it*, *what*, *that*, marks the neuter gender

Questions

1 Classify the pronouns in the following sentence —

'Who is the owner of the horse which you and I were admiring to day?'

2 How far may *he*, *she*, and *it*, be correctly classed as personal pronouns? In what respect do they differ from *I* and *thou*?

3 What is a pronoun? Distinguish between the use of a personal and a relative pronoun Illustrate your explanation by reference to the two sentences 'My brother who came is gone,' 'My brother came, but he is gone'

4 Write three short sentences in which the nominative, possessive, and objective cases of *who*, used as a *relative* pronoun, respectively occur

5 'A gate which opened to them of *his* own accord' (Acts xii 10) Why is *his* used here?

CHAPTER XV.

VERBS

136 A Verb is a word with which we can make an assertion.

We make assertions about things The word which stands for the thing about which we make the assertion is called the subject of the verb, or the subject of the sentence As the names of things are nouns, the subject must be a noun or its equivalent, such as a pronoun, a verb in the infinitive mood, or a noun clause Thus we may say

Error (*Noun*)
It (*Pronoun*)
To err (*Infinitive*)
That one should err (*Noun-clause*)
} is human

When we make an assertion about a thing, we are said in grammatical language to *predicate* something about the thing As no assertion can be made without the use of a verb, the verb is called the Predicate of the subject, or of the sentence in which it occurs

What is asserted is either **action** or **state** *Action* is asserted when we say 'The prisoner stole the watch,' 'The watch was stolen by the prisoner,' 'The prisoner ran away' *State* is asserted when we say 'The prisoner was glad,' 'The prisoner continued unrepentant,' 'The prisoner slept soundly'

137 The action denoted by some verbs is conceived as being directed towards, or passing over to, a certain object. When we say 'The boy kicked the dog, and the dog scratched him,' we assert actions the effects of which were not confined to the agents performing them the boy's action passed beyond the boy and the dog's action passed beyond the dog But when we say 'The boy sat down and cried, and the dog barked and ran away,' we assert actions which terminated with the agents performing them This distinction is expressed by the words *Transitive* and *Intransitive* it is of the greatest importance.

A Transitive Verb is one which indicates an action directed towards some object

An Intransitive Verb is one which indicates (1) an action not directed towards some object, or (2) a state

The student may occasionally be puzzled to determine whether a verb is used transitively or intransitively, for many verbs are used in both ways, though not of course in both ways at the same time. He must ask himself whether the action expressed by the verb produced an effect upon something outside the doer (or, in the case of a reflexive verb, upon the doer itself) He will usually find a word representing the object to which this action passed, but occasionally the object is not mentioned The verb *kicks* is clearly transitive when *the dog* comes after it to indicate its object, and so is *scratched* when it is followed by *him*. But how are we to describe these verbs when we say 'The boy lay on the floor and kicked and scratched'? If we mean that he kicked and scratched people at large, the verbs are both transitive, though the recipients of the actions are not specified. But do we necessarily mean this? If the verbs signify that he merely threw his legs and arms about in the fruitless endeavour to reach an object, *kicked* and *scratched* are not transitive verbs here any more than *walked* or *ran* would be, though they become so, if we suppose that an object is implied

138 As we shall have occasion to make frequent mention of the word Object in connexion with Transitive Verbs, the reader must notice that this term has unfortunately to do a double duty, standing sometimes for the

thing affected by an action and sometimes for the *word* which represents this thing The following definition may help the student to keep his mind clear of confusion arising from this ambiguity

The Object of a verb is the word which stands for the thing which is the object of the action denoted by the verb.

It would be a concise description of a **Transitive** Verb to say that it is a **Verb that can take an Object**

139 Intransitive Verbs are used as Transitives in these ways

1 A verb, usually intransitive, is occasionally employed with a transitive force

Ordinarily Intransitive	Used Transitively
The horse *walks*	I *walked* my horse
I will *run* there	I will *run* the boat aground.
The ship *floats*	He *floated* the ship
Birds *fly*	The boys are *flying* their kites
The mother *rejoiced*	The mother *rejoiced* her son's heart

2 **Prepositions following Intransitive Verbs** may be regarded as forming with them **compound verbs which are Transitive** Thus 'I laughed (intrans) at him,' where the preposition *at* takes an objective case *him*, becomes 'I laughed-at (transitive) him,' where the *him* is the object of the verb The passive construction can then be employed, and we can say 'He was laughed-at' So, 'We arrived at this conclusion' becomes in the passive 'This conclusion was arrived-at' 'They came to this decision' becomes 'This decision was come-to'

3 **Prepositions prefixed to some Intransitive Verbs** make them **Transitive** Thus the intransitive *lie* becomes the transitive *overlie, stand, understand, run, outrun, weep, beweep; moan, bemoan*

4 From a few Intransitive Verbs, **Transitive derivatives** are formed called **Causatives**, signifying to cause or produce the action indicated by the original verb thus from *sit* we obtain *set*, meaning to 'make to sit', from *lie*, *lay*, from *fall*, *fell*, from *rise*, *raise*, from *drink*, *drench*

The student must be on his guard against supposing that an Intransitive is Transitive whenever a noun follows it A noun of kindred meaning to that of the verb accompanies many Intransitives, not as an *object* but as an *adverbial modification* In Latin Grammar this construction is called the **Cognate Accusative** *ludum ludere*, 'to play a game,' *vitam vivere*, 'to live one's life,' are examples in both languages 'To run a race,' 'to walk a mile,' 'to dream a dream,' 'to fight a good fight,' 'to sleep the sleep of death' are illustrations of this construction We describe these nouns as **Cognate Objectives**

140 Conversely, **some Transitive Verbs are used Intransitively** Compare the following

Transitive	Intransitive
He broke the glass	The glass broke
They moved the chair	The chair moved
I slammed the door	The door slammed
He opened the lid	The lid opened
The sun melted the snow	The snow melted
We reformed the criminal	The criminal reformed

Some writers regard these intransitive uses as apparent rather than real, and consider the verbs to be Reflexives with an object *itself* understood

141. **Verbs of Incomplete Predication** Many intransitive verbs make no sense as predicates, unless they are followed by some noun, adjective, or verb in the infinitive mood To say 'He is,' 'They can,' 'We became,' 'You will,' 'She seems,' is meaningless until we add some word to complete the sense Thus we give significance to these

incomplete assertions, if we say 'He is good,' 'He is captain,' 'He is killed,' 'He is come,' 'They can speak French,' 'We became rich,' 'We became partners,' 'You will win,' 'She seems vexed' Such verbs are called Verbs of Incomplete Predication, and the word or words which are added to make sense are called the **Complement** of the Predicate The verbs *grow*, *look*, *feel*, in some of their uses are intransitives of this kind

Certain transitive verbs require, always or in some of their uses, a similar complement If we say 'The king made a treaty,' the sense is complete but if we say 'The king made Walpole,' the sense is incomplete until we add the complement 'a peer,' or 'angry,' or 'continue minister' The verb 'called' is a complete predicate in the sentence 'The master called his valet,' meaning 'summoned him to his presence' it is an incomplete predicate if it signifies 'applied a name to him,' until the name is added, 'The master called his valet a thief,' or 'lazy' 'I think you' requires 'a genius,' 'a fool,' 'clever,' 'mad,' to complete the sense

The name *Neuter* is applied in some books to Intransitive verbs generally, in others to Intransitive verbs of incomplete predication. As there is this ambiguity in its meaning, the best course is to dispense with its use altogether

142 Auxiliary and Notional Verbs When we come to the conjugation of the verb, we shall see that most of the different forms are made by means of other verbs, which are therefore called Auxiliaries (from Lat *auxilium*, 'help,' because they help to conjugate the verb) The different parts of the verbs *be*, *have*, *will*, *shall*, *may*, are employed as Auxiliaries, and when so employed are the substitutes for inflexions of which in our English conjugation very few survive Thus 'I shall have written' is in Latin expressed in one inflected form, *scripsero*, 'you were being loved,' *amabamini*

But the verbs *have*, *will*, *shall*, *may*, possess meanings of their own which are dropped when the words are used as auxiliaries 'He *will* do it' may mean 'He is determined to do it,' as well as 'He is going to do it' In the former case *will* is not an auxiliary, in the latter it is *Have* signifies *possess* when I say 'I have a bicycle,' but it is merely auxiliary when I say 'I have lost my bicycle' *May* means permission in 'You may try if you like,' it is auxiliary when we say 'You won't find out, though you may try your best' Verbs which are used *with a meaning of their own*, and not merely as *substitutes for inflexions* in the conjugation of other verbs, are called **Notional Verbs**

143 An Impersonal Verb is one in which the source of the action is not expressed

A true Impersonal Verb therefore has no subject Only two examples of true Impersonals occur in modern English, *methinks* and *meseems*, and these belong to the diction of rhetoric rather than to every-day speech *Me* is a dative case hence it cannot be the subject The meaning of the two Impersonals is the same, viz 'It seems to me' *Thinks* in *methinks* comes from the Old English *thynkan*, 'to seem,' which was a different verb from *thencan*, 'to think'

'It rains,' 'it freezes,' and similar expressions are commonly called Impersonal, but they have a grammatical subject, *it* If we are asked however, 'What rains?' 'What freezes?' we cannot specify the thing for which the *it* stands the grammatical subject represents no real source of the action.

CHAPTER XVI

Inflexions of Verbs.

144 Verbs undergo changes of form to mark differences of Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person

As inflexions have almost entirely disappeared from English verbs, we have recourse to auxiliary verbs and pronouns to express these differences *Amavérimus*, *amabímur* are inflexions of the Latin verb *amo* *we shall have loved*, *we shall be loved*, their English equivalents, are not inflexions of the verb *love*, the required changes in the meaning of the verb are effected by the use of auxiliaries *Amo* has over a hundred of these inflexions *love* has seven, viz., *love*, *lovest*, *loves*, *loveth*, *loved*, *lovedst*, *loving*, and of these seven, the three forms *lovest*, *loveth*, *lovedst*, are no longer employed in ordinary speech

Voice is the form of a verb which shows whether the subject of the sentence stands for the doer or for the object of the action expressed by the verb.

Mood is the form of a verb which shows the mode or manner in which the action is represented.

Tense is the form of a verb which shows the time at which the action is represented as occur-

ring and the completeness or incompleteness of the action

Number is the form of a verb which shows whether we are speaking of one thing or of more than one

Person is the form of a verb which shows whether the subject of the sentence stands for the speaker, for the person addressed, or for some other thing.

We shall treat of these modifications of the verb in order

145 I Voice.

In English there are two Voices, an Active and a Passive Voice

The Active Voice is that form of a verb which shows that the subject of the sentence stands for the doer of the action expressed by the verb

The Passive Voice is that form of a verb which shows that the subject of the sentence stands for the object of the action expressed by the verb.

Thus in 'Brutus stabbed Caesar,' *Brutus*, the subject of the sentence, represents the doer or agent of the act of stabbing expressed by the verb. *stabbed* is in the active voice In 'Caesar was stabbed by Brutus,' *Caesar*, the subject of the sentence, represents the object or recipient of the act of stabbing *was stabbed* is in the passive voice

Now as the subject of the sentence, when the verb is in the passive, stands for the object or receiver of the action, it is clear that, unless the action denoted by the verb passes on to some object, the passive construction will be impossible Accordingly, only Transitive verbs admit of a passive use

The parts of the auxiliary verb *be* are used with the perfect participle of a transitive verb to form the passive voice. 'I *am* injured,' 'You *were* beaten,' 'He *is* captured,' 'They will *be* assisted,' 'We have *been* turned out'

146 The reader may easily be misled by such forms as 'I *am* come,' 'You *are* arrived,' 'He *is* gone,' 'They *are* fallen,' in which the verbs are intransitive, and their perfect tenses therefore are not passive, though they look as if they were In 'I am injured,' 'You were beaten,' the participles *injured* and *beaten* are passive in 'I am come,' 'You are arrived,' the participles *come* and *arrived* are active There is a slight difference of meaning between the forms 'He is arrived,' 'He is gone' and 'He has arrived,' 'He has gone' 'He *has* gone' lays stress on the action, 'He *is* gone' calls attention to the fact that he continues in a certain state, namely that of absence We can say 'He *has* come and gone,' but not 'He *is* come and gone,' as *is* becomes unsuitable in connexion with *come*, when he no longer continues here, but *is* gone.

147 **Verbs** which take a **double object** admit of **two forms of passive construction** according as one object or the other is made the subject of the passive verb A few illustrations will make this clear

Active.	Passive.
He told me a story	A story was told me by him. I was told a story by him
You granted him permission	Permission was granted him by you He was granted permission by you
They awarded him a prize	A prize was awarded him by them He was awarded a prize by them

The reader may construct further illustrations for himself, using the verbs *promise, ask, refuse, show, offer, forgive,* for the purpose

The secondary forms, in which the Indirect Object, originally in the dative case, becomes the subject, are harsh in sound and illogical in their nature, but there is much of *laissez-faire*, or 'go as-you-please,' about English syntax, and we find such expressions even in good writers

This object after the passive verb is called the **Retained Object** Whether it is the Direct or the Indirect Object that is thus retained the reader can easily determine, by shifting the position of the two objects in the equivalent sentence expressed in the active voice and noticing which of the two requires a preposition when it comes last The object which requires a preposition is the Indirect Object So, 'I forgive you your fault,' becomes 'I forgive your fault *to* you', 'I will allow you your expenses,' 'I will allow your expenses *to* you', 'I have got you the book,' 'I have got the book *for* you' In each example *you* is the Indirect Object.

148 There is a curious use of certain transitive verbs in the active form with a passive meaning In Latin Grammar, verbs of active form and passive meaning are called Quasi-passive *vapulo*, 'I am beaten,' *exulo*, 'I am banished,' are examples Some of our English Quasi-passive verbs express sensations we say of a thing that it '*feels* soft, *tastes* nice, *smells* sweet,' whereas it is really we who feel, taste, and smell the thing In like manner we say that a sentence '*reads* badly,' that a book '*sells* well,' and that a house '*lets* readily'

149 II Mood.

The Moods, or changes of form assumed by a verb to show the different ways in which the action is thought of, are four in number

(1) The **Indicative** Mood contains the forms used (1) to make statements of fact, (2) to ask questions,

and (3) to express suppositions in which the events are treated as if they were facts

(ii) The **Imperative Mood** contains the form used to give commands

(iii) The **Subjunctive Mood** contains the forms used to represent actions or states conceived as possible or contingent, but not asserted as facts

(iv) The **Infinitive Mood** is the form which denotes actions or states without reference to person, number, or time

150 (i) **Uses of the Indicative Mood** The Indicative Mood is used (1) to state facts, 'The man stole the watch,' 'He will be punished' (2) to ask questions, 'Which man stole the watch?' 'Will he be punished?' (3) to express suppositions in which the conditions are dealt with as if they were facts, 'If it is fine to-morrow (the condition may be fulfilled, or it may not, but assuming that as a fact it is,) we will go for a pic-nic'

151 (ii) **Use of the Imperative Mood** Commands must be addressed to the person who is to obey them The person addressed is the second person Accordingly the Imperative Mood can be used only in the second person singular and plural Such expressions as '*Go we* forth together,' or '*Let us go* forth together,' in which we utter a wish or exhortation respecting the first person, are not instances of the Imperative mood they are substitutes for it *Go we* is subjunctive *let us go* is a circumlocution, or roundabout form of expression, which contains an imperative of *let* in the second person and an infinitive *go* expanded it becomes *you let*, or *allow* (imperative) *us* (object) *go*, or *to go* (infinitive)

152 A tense which is expressed by a single word is called a **Simple Tense** a tense which is expressed by the help of an auxiliary verb is called a **Compound Tense**

English verbs contain only two simple tenses in the Indicative and Subjunctive moods, namely, the Present and the Past Indefinite The verb *to be* possesses a fairly complete set of distinct forms in the two tenses of these moods, but in other verbs a difference of inflexion is seen only in the 2nd and 3rd persons singular of the present subjunctive as compared with the indicative. Now as the 2nd person singular is used to-day exclusively in the language of prayer and of poetry, the difference of form between the indicative and the subjunctive mood can be detected in ordinary speech only in the 3rd person singular of the present tense, so long as we confine ourselves to the simple tenses *Thou stealest, He steals,* are indicative forms *If thou steal, if he steal,* are subjunctive forms But as we no longer employ *thou* in the language of every-day life, the sum-total of inflexional differences in the simple tenses, according as the mood is indicative or subjunctive, is represented by the forms *he steals* and *if he steal*

153 The student should make a careful study of the tenses conjugated below

		To Be				To Steal		
		Indicative		Subjunctive		Indicative		Subjunctive
		Present	*Past*	*Present*	*Past*	*Present*	*Past*	*Present*
Sing	1	am	was	be	were	steal	stole	steal
	2	art	wast	be	wert	stealest	stolest	steal
	3	is	was	be	were	steals	stole	steal
Plur	1, 2, 3	are	were	be	were	steal	stole	steal

There are no separate forms for a Past Tense in the subjunctive of any verb except the verb *to be* Consequently, to illustrate the uses of the subjunctive we have recourse to this verb In other verbs the inflexions are reduced to two, one of which, as we said, has no place in ordinary speech, while the use of the other is passing away from modern English The subjunctive mood has decayed

till it is almost dead It is really alive only in the Past Subjunctive of the verb *to be*, especially in its 1st person singular A speaker who employed the Present Subjunctive of *to be*, and said, quite correctly, 'If I *be* there, I shall see him,' would be supposed by many people of average education, (unless their education had included the facts of English Grammar,) to be making the same blunder as a labourer makes when he says 'I *be* here, I *be* just going home' Let the reader ask himself whether he would be more likely to say 'I shall play tennis this afternoon, if it *be* fine,' subjunctive, or 'if it *is* fine,' indicative 'I shall stay in, if it *rain*,' subjunctive, or 'if it *rains*,' indicative There is a quaint formalism about the employment of the subjunctive which makes us avoid it in every-day conversation

154. (iii) **Uses of the Subjunctive Mood.** There are cases however in which we still use the subjunctive mood, and there are other cases in which its use would be legitimate, though it has been ousted from its place by the indicative We still say 'If I *were* you,' not 'If I *was* you,' and we ought to say 'If he *were* you,' though 'If he *was* you' is to be heard quite as often Of these actual or possible uses a book on Grammar must take cognisance.

The **Subjunctive Mood** may be employed to express

(1) a **wish** 'O that I *were* dead!' '*Perish* idolatry!' 'God *save* the Queen!' or an **exhortation** '*Go* we forth,' '*Tell* me he that knows' This latter use of the subjunctive is almost obsolete, even in poetry We should now say 'Let us go,' 'Let him tell'

(2) a **purpose** 'Work lest thou *lose* the prize,' 'Mind that the letter *be* written'

(3) **uncertainty** 'I'll tell him so, whoever he *be*'

(4) **supposition** 'If I *were* you, I would go'

There is thus a scarcity of inflected forms in the Subjunctive, and we manifest a growing reluctance to use those which we still possess Of

the ten or twelve tenses with which the Subjunctive mood is credited in the Conjugation of an Active Verb, as set out in many works on English Grammar, some are identical in form with the tenses of the Indicative, and others which differ, differ only in the form of the auxiliary If we are asked whether any particular tense form, which is identical in appearance in both moods, is subjunctive or indicative in a certain context, the answer will be suggested, if we substitute for the tense form in question an equivalent expression compounded with the verb *to be*, as the verb *to be* marks the difference between subjunctive and indicative by a variation in its inflexions Thus, suppose we wish to determine the mood of *spoke*, in 'The master asked who *spoke*', if we convert *spoke* into *was speaking* we see that the mood is indicative Again, supposing we are asked the mood of *told*, in 'I should not believe him even if he *told* the truth,' if *told=was telling*, the mood is indicative, if *told=were telling*, the mood is subjunctive Similarly, 'I *could* do it if I *liked*' resolves itself into 'I *were* able to do it if I *were* willing' it would be impossible to replace *could* by *was able*, so we may say that *could* is used with the force of the subjunctive here, but as 'if I liked' might be replaced by either '*were* willing' or '*was* willing,' we may regard *liked* either as subjunctive or as indicative

155 Finite and Infinite forms of the Verb Thus far we have dealt with those parts of the verb which are called **finite** When we say 'I ran,' the action expressed by the verb is limited in various ways Thus it is limited as regards **number**, it is one person who ran It is limited as regards **person**, it is *I*, not *thou* nor *he*, that ran It is limited as regards the **time** when the running took place, the running is not occurring now, nor is it going to occur in the future, it occurred in the past A verb, with the action which it denotes thus limited or restricted as regards person, number, and time, is said to be a **finite verb**, because *finite* means 'limited,' 'bounded,' 'restricted,' (from Latin *fines*, 'boundaries')

Now the verb can also be used in various forms without these limitations, and it will then express merely the idea of the action (or state) without denoting that the action is done by one agent or by more than one, or by any particular agent at all, or at any particular time[1] These forms belong

[1] On this point see Question 14 at the end of this chapter

to what is called the **Verb Infinite**, that is to say, the verb unlimited, unrestricted, unbounded.

156 The **Verb Infinite** contains the **Infinitive Mood**, the **Gerund**, the **Verbal Noun**, and the **Participles**

(iv) The **Infinitive Mood** commonly occurs in modern English with *to* before it, but there are many verbs which are followed by an infinitive without *to* the verbs *may*, *can*, *shall*, *will*, *must*, *let*, *do*, verbs expressing sensation, *see*, *hear*, *feel*, *need*, and the verbs *make* and *dare* are examples Thus we say 'I may, can, shall, will, must *do* it,' not '*to do* it' 'Let him *do* it,' not '*to do* it' 'You do *think* so,' not '*to think* so' 'We saw, heard, and felt it *shake*,' not '*to shake*' 'They made him *tell*,' not '*to tell*' 'You need not *go*,' not '*to go*' 'I dare *say* this,' though the *to* is admissible here, 'I dare *to say* this' But after several of these verbs in the passive, *to* is inserted. 'He was seen *to take* it and made *to return* it'

The Infinitive mood is equivalent to a Noun It resembles a noun in this respect, that it can be used as the **subject** or **object** of a verb

'*To read* improves the mind' *to read* is here subject

'He likes *to read*' *to read* is here object

The infinitive resembles a noun in this respect also, that it can **follow certain prepositions** 'I want nothing *except* to live quietly,' 'He has no hope *but* to escape punishment,' 'You care for nothing *save* to make money'

157 **Simple and Gerundial Infinitive** In an earlier stage of the language, *to* was not used with the simple infinitive any more than it is now used with infinitives which follow the verbs mentioned above The infinitive had an inflexion which showed what part of the verb it was, and the preposition *to* was prefixed to the dative case of this infinitive in order to mark purpose Thus in 'I came to see him,' where *to* signifies 'in order to' and expresses purpose, *see* would have appeared in the dative with *to* prefixed in Old English, but in 'I wish to see him,' where *to* does not signify 'in order to' and no purpose is expressed, *see* would

have appeared without *to*, in the objective case of the infinitive We may still discriminate between these uses of the infinitive, though the inflexion has vanished, and the preposition *to* has been attached to the simple infinitive When the infinitive is employed with the meaning that something is purposed to be done, or that it is fit or necessary to be done, and in cases in which the gerund preceded by *to*, *for*, or similar prepositions, would express the same meaning, we call it the Gerundial Infinitive. The following examples illustrate its use

'They came *to tell* me' 'He that hath ears *to hear*, let him hear' 'He is much *to be pitied*' 'These troubles are hard *to bear*' 'These troubles are hard *to be borne*' 'This is sad *to tell*' 'Here is water *to drink*' 'I have a house *to let* and a horse *to sell*'

158 **Verbal Forms in -ing.** We now come to the forms in -ing, which are a cause of great perplexity to beginners Beginners are disposed to describe every form in *-ing* as a present participle Now what we propose to do here is to deal with these forms as we find them existing to-day, and to give them such names as are in keeping with the functions which they perform in modern English To discover the forms and the functions as they existed six hundred years ago is a worthy object of inquiry, but as the best authorities are at variance about the early history of our forms in *-ing*, we will approach the treatment of them without any historical encumbrances and will endeavour to give such a description of them as shall be appropriate to their character at the present day

Let us take the sentence—

(1) '*To heal* the sick is a noble work'

In what other ways can we make this assertion, employing some form in *-ing* of the verb *heal* for our subject and leaving the rest of the sentence unchanged?

We can say—

(2) '*The healing of* the sick is a noble work,'—and

(3) '*Healing* the sick is a noble work'

And whether we say *to heal*, or *the healing of*, or *healing*, the meaning is the same as if we said 'The cure of the sick.'

Now *cure* is a noun So it is clear that these various forms of the verb *heal* are equivalent to nouns We have seen that *to heal* is the simple infinitive In *the healing of*, *healing* is evidently a noun it takes the article before it, and it is followed by a noun dependent on it in the possessive case Thus only *healing* in the third sentence remains for consideration What are we to call it?

(*a*) Some say a **noun.** But is it exactly like an ordinary noun? No, for it takes an objective case after it instead of being followed by a possessive

(*b*) Some say an **infinitive** '*Healing* the sick' means just the same as '*to heal* the sick' 'to heal' is infinitive, therefore *healing* is infinitive

(*c*) Some say a **gerund** The Gerund in Latin grammar is a verbal noun, occurring in certain cases, and possessing this peculiarity that, although a noun, it governs another noun, just as the verb from which it is formed governs a noun This description seems to agree very well with the character of the word *healing* when we say '*Healing* the sick is a noble work,' for *healing* is followed by *the sick* in the objective case

Now if a person chooses to call *healing* in this context an Infinitive, or a Noun, or a Gerund, he is at liberty to do so, and it really is a matter of small importance which name he selects, for the Infinitive is a noun, and the Gerund is a noun But as we already have two forms of the Infinitive with *to* on our hands, there is an advantage in not pressing the name 'Infinitive' into service to describe the form in *-ing* And as we already have another form of the verbal noun, with *the* before it and *of* after it, there is an advantage in refraining from calling this form in *ing* also a noun, so we may as well agree to call it a Gerund, and we will give its definition thus

A Gerund is a verbal noun in -ing which, when formed from a transitive verb, can take after it an object.

159 Entirely different from all these noun-forms is the **Participle in -ing** **Participles are adjectives** To confound one of the preceding forms with a participle in *-ing* is to confound a noun with an adjective, a name of a thing with a word which limits the application of the name, and this is a very serious confusion indeed

A Participle is a verbal adjective The active participle of a transitive verb differs from an ordinary adjective in taking an object

Thus in the sentence 'I saw a doctor *healing* his patients,' *healing* refers to 'doctor,' limiting the application of the name, and at the same time takes an object *his patients*, just as the verb in its finite forms would take as an object *his patients* *e g* 'He healed his patients'

Why are beginners inclined to describe every verbal form in *-ing* as a participle?

Because, as a fact, we do make use of a large number of present participles in the conjugation of our verbs All the tenses expressing incomplete action are formed by the aid of this participle in *-ing*, 'I am writing,' 'You were speaking,' 'He will be waiting,' 'They will have been searching,' are examples, and the reader will realise on reflexion that they illustrate a very common form of expression Except in conjugating the imperfect tenses of our verbs, however, the participle in *-ing* is not largely used Thus, though we might possibly say 'Meeting Smith and hearing you were in town, I came to see you,' yet we should be more likely to say 'I met Smith and heard you were in town, so I have come to see you'

The Participle in *-ing* is an active participle It is usually called the Present Participle, and we shall give it

this name, though it would be more properly termed the Imperfect or Incomplete Participle, as it denotes not time but unfinished action,—action still in progress *writing*, *healing*

Our other Participle is the Perfect Participle, denoting action which is completed and no longer in progress This is usually called the Past Participle, and we shall employ the ordinary though less accurate name for it It ends in *-en*, *-n*, *beaten*, *shown*, or *-ed*, *-d*, *-t*, *healed*, *loved*, *slept* If the verb is a transitive verb, this Participle is passive.

160 Notice these points connected with the Participles

(i) The Passive Participle combined with the verb *have* forms tenses of the active verb thus, 'He has stolen the watch,' 'I had eaten my dinner' The explanation of the construction is this 'He has stolen the watch' was once expressed thus, 'He has (or holds, or possesses) the watch stolen,' *stolen* being originally in agreement with *watch* So, 'I had eaten my dinner' was once 'I had (or held, or possessed) my dinner eaten' Then came a time when the real force of *have* in this connexion was lost, its notional meaning disappeared, and it became a mere auxiliary, so that no contradiction was apparent, as it would formerly have been apparent, in saying 'I have lost my watch,' though it is obvious that, if the watch is lost, we cannot correctly say 'I have (or hold, or possess) my watch lost,' as in such a case I hold or possess it no longer

(ii) We have adopted this use of *have* with the Past Participle of intransitive verbs, and we say 'I have been,' 'I have stood,' 'I have dreamt,' 'I have slept,' though we cannot say 'I am been,' 'I am stood,' 'I am dreamt,' 'I am slept.' The Participle of intransitive verbs is Perfect, or Past, but it is not Passive

161 The results of this discussion of the Verb Infinite may be summarized in a convenient form thus

The forms of the Verb Infinite are
- Nouns
  - with *to*
    1. Simple Infinitive
    2. Gerundial Infinitive marking Purpose
  - in *-ing*
    3. Verbal Noun with *the* ... *of*
    4. Gerund
- Adjectives
  1. Present Participle Active in *ing*
  2. Past Participle in *en, -n, -ed, -d, -t*

162 Illustrations of these forms.

1 **Simple Infinitive** '*To work* hard is the way *to get* on' 'I can *go*' 'We heard him *call*' 'Better *dwell* in the midst of alarms
'Than *reign* in this horrible place'

2 **Gerundial Infinitive** 'The sower went forth *to sow*' 'Bread *to eat*,' i e 'for eating' 'Ears *to hear*,' i e 'for hearing'

3 **Verbal Noun** 'They brought flowers for *the decorating of* the altar' '*The writing of* the book was a protracted task' '*The hunting of* the fox is a national pastime'

4 **Gerund** '*Seeing* is *believing*' '*Seeing* a conjuror is one thing and *believing* him is another' 'I am fond of *seeing* a conjuror' 'We were prevented from *seeing* the conjuror' 'They asked about *seeing* the conjuror'

5 **The Participle in ing** 'The company sat *watching* the conjuror *performing* his tricks' 'They are *watching* the conjuror' '*Seeing* the conjuror there, I went in'

6 **The Participle in -en, -d, -t** 'This is *stolen*' 'He has *stolen* it' 'This is *mended*' 'He has *mended* it'

Compound Gerund Forms It should be noticed that we use combinations of the Gerunds of the verbs *have* and *be* with Participles, as we use the simple Gerunds the following are examples of these compound gerund forms 'I was afraid of his *having gone* away' 'The master charged him with *having been wasting* his time' 'My *having been struck* explains my *being* exasperated'

Observe that in compound nouns the form in ing is frequently gerundive Thus a *walking stick* is a stick *for walking*, a *fishing-rod* is a rod *for fishing* If these forms in *ing* were participles, a *walking stick* would be a stick that walked and a *fishing rod* a rod that fished, just as a *talking fish* is a fish that talks and a *laughing hyæna* a hyæna that laughs

163 III Tense.

Tense marks (i) the **time** at which we represent an action as occurring Now time is either Present, Past, or Future So far therefore as the time alone of an action is taken into account, we shall have three Tenses *I write, I wrote, I shall write*

But tense marks not only the time at which the action is described as occurring, but also (ii) its **completeness** or **incompleteness** at that time An action must be either finished, done, completed, perfect, at any particular time, or it must be unfinished, not yet done, incomplete, imperfect, still in progress, at that time But though the action itself must be either finished or not finished, we may speak of it **without reference to its character as finished or not finished,** and our mention of the action in this aspect will then be undetermined or **indefinite**

Hence, as we may indicate that an action belongs to present, past, or future time, and may also describe it at each of those times (1) as in a finished condition, or (2) as in a progressive condition, or (3) may leave the fact of its being already finished or still in progress undetermined or indefinite, we shall have nine distinct tenses in which these differences are expressed The following table presents these **nine Primary Tenses** in an intelligible form

Time	Imperfect, Incomplete, Unfinished, Progressive, Continuous	Perfect, Complete, Finished	Indefinite
Present	I am writing	I have written	I write
Past	I was writing	I had written	I wrote
Future	I shall be writing	I shall have written	I shall write

164. Remarks on the Tenses.

1 **The Perfect Continuous Tenses** There is an additional set of tenses, by which we indicate that an action has been, had been, or will have been going on, and also that it still is, was, or will continue to be, in progress Thus we may say 'I have been writing all the morning,' which signifies that my writing has been going on in the past and is not yet over but still continues 'I have written all the morning' would imply that my writing was now completed or done. Similarly, 'I had been waiting an hour when he met me' means that my waiting was still in progress and had lasted some time when he arrived 'I shall have been travelling for six hours when I reach Bristol' means that my journey will have lasted for six hours and will not yet be finished when I arrive at Bristol These tenses are called—

Present Perfect Continuous	I have been writing
Past Perfect Continuous	I had been writing
Future Perfect Continuous	I shall have been writing

2 **Other so called Tenses** We may have occasion to describe an action as about to begin, and to do this may use the verb *go* in combination with the principal verb, and say 'I am going to write.' In some books on grammar, 'I am going to write,' 'I was going to write,' 'I shall be going to write,' are called Intentional Tenses, or Paulo post-future Tenses They are however not tenses at all Compound Tenses are formed only by the assistance of the auxiliary verbs, and *go* is not an auxiliary verb We express an action as on the point of beginning equally well when we say 'I am about to write,' but no one proposes to call this form of expression a tense In Latin there was a class of derivative verbs called Inceptives, which marked the fact of the commencement of an action by their suffix *-sco e g pallesco*, 'I turn pale,' *calesco*, 'I grow warm,' *silvescit*, 'it runs to wood' The verbs *turn*, *grow*, *run*, in these connections express the beginning of the act, but we do not regard them as contributing to the formation of Inceptive tenses

On similar grounds we must reject the so called Emphatic Tenses formed by using the verb *do* 'I *do* think so,' 'He *did* say that,' '*Do* tell me'

3 **Modes of Tense Formation.** With the exception of the Present Indefinite and the Past Indefinite, all our tenses are formed by the use of auxiliaries The Past Indefinite undergoes inflexion to mark the change of time 'I wrote,' 'I walked' It is sometimes called the Preterite, or Aorist.

A glance down the columns of Imperfect and of Perfect Tenses will enable the reader to see the principle on which these tenses are formed The Imperfect Tenses are formed by combining some part of *be* with

the Present Participle The Perfect Tenses are formed by combining some part of *have* with the Past Participle

The Future tenses are formed by the verbs *shall* and *will* with the infinitive mood

4 **Perfect and Imperfect** The student must be careful to understand that the words Perfect and Imperfect refer to the character of the action as regards completeness, and not to its time In the Latin Grammar he finds *amabam* described as 'Imperfect,' and as *amabam* means 'I was loving' he gets the notion that an Imperfect Tense is necessarily a Past Tense Again, *amavi* is called 'Perfect,' and one of the renderings given of it is 'I loved', hence he gets the notion that a Perfect Tense is necessarily a Past Tense Now *Perfectum* means 'finished, 'completed' *Imperfectum* means 'unfinished,' 'incomplete.'

To gain a clear conception of this distinction, let us suppose that boy walks from one side of the room to the other How should w describe his action? We should say 'He *is walking* across the room' the action is in progress it is unfinished, or Imperfect But it is going on at this moment and is therefore rightly described as Present Imperfect When he has finished walking across the room, we say 'H *has reached* the other side,' 'He *has walked* across the room' Does this necessarily imply that the action is past? As soon as the action i finished, it is certainly past But in saying 'He has reached the othe side,' we are thinking rather that he is there now, than that the actio belongs to past time The action is ended, but it is only just ended, an its consequences continue present with us If the action and its consequences are over and done with, the Perfect Tense is no longer appropriate We should not say 'I have written a letter last week,' but 'wrote a letter' the action took place some time ago 'I have writte a letter' signifies that my letter has just now been completed, and her it is

5 **Advantages of our Mode of Tense Formation** By the aid of auxiliary verbs, we are able to express distinctions of time and completeness with a minuteness and accuracy to which other languages are unable to attain *Amat* in Latin means both 'he loves' and 'he is loving' *amavi* means 'I have loved,' which is Present Perfect, and 'I loved,' which is Past Indefinite, or Aorist

6 **The Uses of the Present Indefinite should be noted.**

(1) This tense occasionally expresses an action going on at the present time, but it does this very rarely 'How fast it *rains*!' 'He *wins* in a canter,' 'The kettle *boils*' Generally we should use the Present Imperfect even in such expressions as these, and in most cases it would be impossible to employ the Present Indefinite to denote an action in progress at the present time We say 'What *are* you *writing*?'

not 'What *do* you *write?*' 'I *am writing* my exercise,' not 'I *write* my exercise'

(2) It expresses an action which is habitual, as 'He *goes* to town every morning,' and a general truth, as 'Water *boils* at 212°'

(3) It expresses a future action, as 'I *go* to town next week'

(4) It expresses a past action in graphic narrative 'The Greeks *maintain* their ranks, the Persians *press* on, Leonidas *falls*, and the battle *rages* fiercely' This is called the Historic Present it gives a vivid representation of an occurrence, and is frequently used in the conversation of persons of lively imagination

(5) It introduces quotations 'Shakespeare *says*,' 'Xenophon *describes*,' 'The Bible *tells* us,' 'Montaigne *remarks*'

165 IV Number.

There are two numbers in verbs When the subject of the verb is in the singular, the verb is in the singular, when the subject is in the plural, the verb is in the plural

166 V Person

Although we have an inflexion marking the Second Personal Singular, *lov-est*, *loved-st*, these forms occur only in the language of prayer and of poetry, not in ordinary speech

The form of the Third Person Singular Present Indicative, *lov-eth*, is also obsolete in conversation and is used only when an archaic diction is employed for the purpose of solemnity, real or affected The suffix *-s* is the only inflexion of Person which survives in common use

The Personal endings were originally Personal Pronouns The suffix of the First Person, *-m*, is still visible in *a-m* This *-m* is the *m* of *me* Compare the Latin su*m*, ame*m*

To trace the Pronouns in their disguises as endings of the Second and Third Persons Singular of the verb would lead us into very obscure by-paths of philology The reader must pursue this inquiry at a later time

167 Weak and Strong Verbs. According to their mode of forming the Past Tense, verbs are called Weak or Strong

A **Weak Verb** is one which forms its Past Tense by adding *-ed*, *-d*, or *-t*, to the present *walked*, *loved*, *dreamt*

A **Strong Verb** is one which forms its Past Tense by change of vowel and without the addition of a suffix

The Past Participle of a Weak Verb is of the same form as the Past Tense *I walked*, (I have) *walked*

The Past Participle of a Strong Verb (1) sometimes ends in *-en*, (2) sometimes has a different modification of the vowel from that of the Past Tense, and (3) sometimes is of the same form as the Past Tense *I drove*, (I have) *driven*, *I sprang*, (I have) *sprung*, *I stood*, (I have) *stood*

168 Suppose that a verb forms its Past Tense in *-d* or *-t* and also changes its vowel are we to call it Weak or Strong?

In such a case, look at the Past Participle If this is formed in *en*, then probably the verb is Strong But if it is not formed in *-en*, we can tell whether the verb is to be classed as Weak or Strong only by tracing it back to an earlier period and discovering how it was originally conjugated The safest practical guide is the formation of the Past Tense in *-d* or *-t* Verbs with a Past Tense formed in this manner are with very few exceptions Weak Verbs The following are however Strong Verbs, though their Past Tense ends in *-d* or *-t*, for this *-d* or *-t* is in these instances a part of the present stem and not an inflexion of the past tense *beat*, *bid*, *bind*, *bite*, *burst*, *fight*, *find*, *get*, *grind*, *hide*, *hold*, *let*, *shoot*, *slide*, *slit*, *seethe*, *sit*, *stand*, *spit*, *tread*, *wind*[1]

169 The following points connected with these two conjugations deserve notice

(*a*) The verbs which belong to the Strong conjugation are old verbs and of English origin All words newly introduced make their Past Tense and Past Participle in *-ed*, as *telegraphed*, *boycotted* Many verbs once Strong have become wholly or partially Weak *cleave*, *cleft*, *cleft*, was formerly *cleave*, *clave*, *cloven*, *shear*, *sheared*, *sheared*, was formerly *shear*, *shore*, *shorn* For a verb originally Weak to have become Strong is an exceedingly rare occurrence *wear* and *hide* are examples of this unusual process

(*b*) Most of the Strong Verbs originally formed their Past Tense by reduplication we see this mode of formation at work in Latin perfects

[1] Gow's *Method of English*, p 123

like *te-tendi*, *tu tudi*, *spo pondi*, *fe-felli* The sole survival in modern English is the word *did*, past tense of *do* The obsolete verb *hight* shows the same process of reduplication in the recurrence of the *h* *Hight* means 'was called' 'Barbican it *hight*' means 'It was called Barbican' 'This grisly beast, which by name Lion *hight*,' means 'which was called Lion'

(*c*) Some writers regard the *-d* or *t* of Weak Verbs as a corruption of *did* thus *I walk ed* is *I walk did*, *thou walk edst* is *thou walk didst* This explanation is probably wrong

It seems scarcely worth the reader's while to spend his labour on learning the classification of Strong Verbs in half a dozen different groups, unless he is studying at first hand English books written five centuries ago, in which he will find these distinctions of form well marked To recognise the broad difference between Weak and Strong Verbs is important, but to burden the memory with a mass of perplexing details,—lists of verbs like *creep*, *crept*, *crept*, *buy*, *bought*, *bought*, *lead*, *led*, *led*, *shut*, *shut*, *shut*, which have the appearance of belonging to the Strong Conjugation but as a matter of fact belong to the Weak,—is to burden it with what is mere useless cram Several Weak Verbs such as *creep* and *lead* show a change of vowel in their past tense or past participle, but the change is merely euphonic and does not indicate that they belong to the Strong Conjugation

(*d*) It is interesting to notice how certain Strong Past Participles are still preserved as Adjectives used in particular phrases, though the Participle proper has assumed the Weak form This contrast is illustrated by the following examples[1]

Strong Participle	of Verb	Ordinary Participle
cloven hoof	*cleave*	*cleaved*
graven image	(en)*grave*	*graved*
molten metal	*melt*	*melted*
sodden ground	*seethe*	*seethed*

(*e*) In like manner when two forms of the Past Participle exist, both Strong or both Weak, in some cases one form is preferred for use as the Adjective The following are instances of this

As Adjectives	As Participles
A *drunken* man	The man is *drunk*
Ill *gotten* gains	He has *got* his gains ill
A *sunken* ship	The ship has *sunk*
My *bounden* duty	I was *bound* to do it

[1] Fuller lists are given in Hewitt's *Manual of Our Mother Tongue*, pp 98–9, Low's *English Language*, pp 135–6

The duplicate forms given above belong to verbs of the Strong Conjugation. The following are instances of a similar distinction in Weak Verbs

A *dread* foe	The foe was *dreaded*
A *lighted* candle	The candle was *lit*
Roast meat	The meat was *roasted*
On *bended* knee	His knees were *bent*

(*f*) The following orthographical modifications, or changes in spelling, in the inflexion of verbs should be noticed

1 An *e* at the end of the verb is dropped before another vowel so, *love, lov ing, shape, shap ing, shap en* (Notice, however, *singeing* from *singe*, to avoid confusion with *singing* from *sing*.)

2 To verbs ending in a sibilant, *es* is added in the 3rd person singular of the present indicative and sounded as a distinct syllable so *pass-es, f ish es, to uch es*

3 After a consonant, *y* becomes *ie* when *-s* or *d* follows so, *rel ies, rel-ied* but after a vowel, *y* is kept so, *play s, play ed* (Compare the formation of plurals of nouns in *-y*, *e g lady*, *boy*, and of comparatives of adjectives in *-y*, *e g merry, gay*)

4 In some verbs *-ayed* is written *-aid* so, *laid, paid, said*

5 A final consonant, preceded by an accented short vowel, is doubled before *e* and *i*, to mark the pronunciation as short so, *shop p-ing, bid d en, excel-l-ed, prefer-r-ed*, but *differ ed, offer-ed*

170 In the following lists of Strong and Weak Verbs, with their Past Tense and Past Participle, the student will find only those about the principal parts of which he is likely to feel any uncertainty For convenience of reference the arrangement is alphabetical a distribution of Strong and Weak Verbs in classes, according to their mode of forming their Past Tense and Past Participle, is of no value except to those whose researches carry them back to the earlier stages of our language In the Questions at the end of this chapter, many of the verbs omitted from these lists will be found The reader should test his knowledge of their principal parts and mark those in which he makes any mistake. He will get at the Past Participle most easily by thinking of it in its combination with *I have* to form the Present Perfect tense · thus, supposing that he is asked to give the principal parts of *spring*, he may blunder in the

principal parts, if he tries mechanically to repeat *spring, sprang, sprung*, and may say *spring, sprung, sprang*, but if he thinks of the forms as he is in the habit of using them, *I spring, I sprang, I have sprung*, it is much less likely that he will go wrong

The forms given below in brackets are those less frequently used, or used only in special phrases

The letter *W* prefixed to forms in the list of Strong Verbs indicates that those forms are Weak

171 List of Strong Verbs.

Pres	*Past*	*P Part*
abide	abode	abode
awake	awoke	awoke
W.	awaked	awaked
bear	bore	born
(carry)	bore	borne
behold	beheld	beheld (beholden)
bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
bind	bound	bound (bounden)
blow	blew	blown
chide	chid	chidden, chid
choose	chose	chosen
cleave	clave	cloven
W	cleft	cleft
crow	crew	
W	crowed	crowed
dig	dug	dug
W	(digged)	(digged)
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
eat	ate	eaten
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forget	forgot	forgotten
forsake	forsook	forsaken
get	got	got (gotten)
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
W	(hanged)	(hanged)
hew	hewed*	hewn, hewed

Pres	*Past*	*P Part*
lade		laden
W	laded	laded
lie	lay	lain
mow		mown
W	mowed	mowed
ring	rang	rung
rive	*W* rived	riven
seethe	sod	sodden
W	seethed	seethed
sew	*W* sewed	sewn, sewed
sow	*W* sowed	sown, sowed
shake	shook	shaken
shear	(shore)	shorn
W	sheared	sheared
shine	shone	shone
shew	*W* shewed	shewn
show	*W* showed	shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk (shrunken)
sit	sat	sat
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slid (slidden)
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
smite	smote	smitten
stride	strode	stridden
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
swell		swollen
W	swelled	swelled

Pres	*Past*	*P Part.*
tear	tore (tare)	torn
thrive	throve	thriven
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden (trod)
wake	woke	woke

Pres	*Past*	*P Part*
W	waked	waked
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven
win	won	won
wring	wrung	wrung

172. List of Weak Verbs.

The following verbs show a departure from the regular formation of the Past Tense and Past Participle in *-d* or *-t*

Pres	*Past*	*P Part*
bend	bent	bent
bereave	bereft	bereft
	bereaved	bereaved
beseech	besought	besought
betide	betid	betid
bleed	bled	bled
blend	blended	blent
		blended
breed	bred	bred
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
clothe	clothed	clothed
	clad	clad
dream	dreamed	dreamed
	dreamt	dreamt
dwell	dwelled	dwelled
	dwelt	dwelt
flee	fled	fled
gird	girded	girded
	girt	girt
have	had	had

Pres	*Past*	*P Part*
kneel	knelt	knelt
lay	laid	laid
lean	leaned	leaned
	leant	leant
learn	learned	learned
	learnt	learnt
leave	left	left
light	lighted, lit	lighted, lit
make	made	made
pen (confine)	penned	penned, pent
pen (write)	penned	penned
read	read	read
rend	rent	rent
rid	rid	rid
seek	sought	sought
shoe	shod	shod
speed	sped	sped
weep	wept	wept
work	wrought	wrought
	worked	worked

Help has a Strong P Part *holpen* 'He hath holpen his servant Israel'

Lose had a P Part *lorn* preserved in *forlorn*

Had and *made* are contracted from *haved* and *maked*

Wrought from *work* shows metathesis, or transposition of consonants

Go (P Part *gone*) supplies its Past Tense *went* from *wend*, which is now inflected as a Weak verb, *wended*

Yclept is from an Old Eng verb meaning 'to call' The *y* is a corruption of the prefix *ge*, which occurs in the P Part in modern German

173 Conjugation of the Verb

The collection of all the forms of a Verb, by which we mark its Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person, is called its Conjugation

We have already seen that our supply of inflexions is quite insufficient to mark many of the distinctions of voice, mood, and tense, which we wish to express In conjugating our verbs we therefore make use of other verbs called Auxiliaries These Auxiliary Verbs will be discussed in the next chapter, but as the reader possesses a practical knowledge of his own language, it will be no embarrassment to him, if we complete our treatment of the verb generally, by inserting at this point illustrations of the conjugation of a verb, although to do this will involve the employment of those Auxiliaries to the treatment of which we are to come later on

First we will give the conjugation of a Weak and of a Strong Verb containing all their simple forms (that is, those not made by the aid of auxiliary verbs), both inflected and uninflected The reader should notice (1) that the conjugation when confined to the simple forms is of very limited extent, and (2) that the inflexions of Strong verbs are the same as those of Weak verbs except in the Past Tense and Past Participle Take as the Weak verb *want*, and as the Strong verb *break*[1]

[1] Low's *English Language*, pp 129, 148

Verb Finite.

Present

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Sing 1	want	break	want	break
2	want-est	break est	want	break
3	want s	break s	want	break
Pl 1, 2, 3	want	break	want	break

Past

Sing 1	want ed	brok e	[wanted	broke
2	want-edst	brok-est	wanted	broke
3	want-ed	broke	wanted	broke
Pl 1, 2, 3	want ed	broke	wanted	broke]

Imperative.

2 *Sing* }
2 *Pl* } want, break

Verb Infinite.

Infinitive	(to) want, break
Gerund	want ing, break ing
Participles	Present. want-ing, break-ing
	Past want ed, brok en

Next let us take the conjugation of the verb *break*, making use of Auxiliaries To bring out, where possible, the distinction between Indicative and Subjunctive forms, the Third Person Singular of each Tense is given, *he* or *it* being understood as a subject

		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	TENSE.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE.
Present	Indefinite	breaks	is broken	break	be broken
	Imperfect	is breaking	is being broken	be breaking	be being broken
	Perfect	has broken	has been broken	have broken	have been broken
	Perfect Contin	has been breaking	———	have been breaking	———
Past	Indefinite	broke	was broken	broke	were broken
	Imperfect	was breaking	was being broken	were breaking	were being broken
	Perfect (Pluperf)	had broken	had been broken	had broken	had been broken
	Perfect Contin	had been breaking	———	had been breaking	———
Future	Indefinite	will break	will be broken	No future tenses	
	Imperfect	will be breaking	(will be being broken)		
	Perfect	will have broken	will have been broken		
	Perfect Contin	will have been breaking	———		

IMPERATIVE—Present ACTIVE break, PASSIVE be broken

		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES AND GERUNDS	
Present	Indefinite	(to) break	(to) be broken		
	Imperfect	be breaking	(be being broken)	breaking	being broken
	Perfect	have broken	have been broken	having broken	broken
	Perfect Contin	have been breaking	———	having been breaking	having been broken

QUESTIONS

1. Give the Past Tense and Past Participle of the following Strong Verbs —*arise, beat, begin, bite, break, burst, climb, cling, come, do, drive, fall, fight, find, fling, freeze, give, go, grave, grind, heave, help, hold, know, melt, ride, rise, run, see, shave, shoot, sing, sink, speak, spin, spring, stand, steal, sting, stink, strike, swim, swing, take, wind, write*

2 Give the same forms of the following Weak Verbs —*bring, build, burn, buy, cost, creep, cut, deal, dwell, feed, feel, gild, hit, hurt, keep, knit, lead, leap, let, lose, mean, meet, put, rap, rid, rot, say, sell, send, set, shed, shoed, shut, sleep, slit, smell, spell, spend, spill, spit, split, spread, sweat, sweep, teach, tell, think, thrust, wend, wet, whet*

3 Distinguish the forms of *-ing* in these sentences —I saw him *riding* yesterday—This is my *riding* horse—*Riding* is pleasanter than *walking*—The *riding* of the cavalry was excellent—He is *riding* his cob—He keeps his health by *riding* regularly—*Riding* in the Row, I met the duke—This curb is no good for *riding*—He goes to the *riding* school—I like *riding*—I am very fond of *riding*—He is gone *a-riding*

[In the last example, the *a* is a corruption of the preposition *on*]

4 Write short notes explaining the use of the words in italics

(1) The rose would *smell* as *sweet*

(2) Better *dwell* in the midst of alarms

[On (1) see p 138 and for *sweet* p 175

(2) *Dwell* is the infinitive *to dwell* used as subject of *is* understood 'To dwell in the midst of alarms is better than to reign in this horrible place' The omission of *to* before the infinitive as subject of a verb was not uncommon formerly]

5 In the expressions (1) I had to go, (2) I had rather go, by what mood is *had* followed, and why?

6 Give four verbs which have only one form for present tense, past tense, and past participle, also four which have two forms, and four in which all these three parts are different in form

7 How do you distinguish between transitive and intransitive verbs? To which of these classes does the verb in the following sentence belong?—'Not a drum was heard'

What are the transitive verbs corresponding to *fall, lie, sit, rise*?

8 Is any alteration necessary in the following sentence?—'Stand the gun in the corner'

[If *stand* can be used transitively, signifying 'make or cause to stand,' the sentence is right We do use it in this way in conversation, but in the more formal literary language, the transitive *set* or *place* would be employed]

9 What class of verbs may be put into the passive voice? Change the verbs in the following sentence into the passive voice —

'The Persians attacked the Greeks again, but they did not make any impression on the little army'

How have the subjects and objects been affected by the change?

10 Distinguish clearly between the meaning of It *is destroyed*, He *is deceived*, on the one hand, and that of It *is fallen*, He *is risen*, on the other

11 What does the *infinitive* mood express?

Parse fully the verbs in the following —

'It is laughable to see beginners play'

12 State the various ways in which the infinitive mood may be used Give illustrative sentences

13 Correct the mistakes in the following sentences —

'The lion, having laid down, roared loud'

'As he lay down the weight, it slipped and has broke his arm'

'The look of immovable endurance which underlaid his expression'

'He lay himself down'

'Thou dashest him to earth—there let him lay'

'I would not like to say that the pistol laid yesterday as it lies now'

'Will you lose that knot for me?'

Comment on any grammatical peculiarity in the lines—

'And while his harp responsive rung,
'Twas thus the latest minstrel sung'

14 Is it correct to say that the Infinitive Mood does not mark differences in the time of the action? Consider the forms *to write*, *to have written*, *to be going to write*, in answering the question

[With regard to the expression *to be going to write*, we may remark that the combination of the verb *go* with *to write* does not constitute a tense Other circumlocutions, or roundabout modes of expression, might be employed to convey the same meaning, and these circumlocutions would have as good a claim to recognition, as forms of the future infinitive, as the phrase *to be going to write e g to be about to write, to be on the point of writing, to have the intention of writing* See p 150, (2)

With regard to the form *to have written*, the case is different This is a genuine tense of the infinitive mood But the difference of meaning between *to write* and *to have written* is a difference of completeness, not of time When we say 'He seems to have written the copy correctly,' 'I expect to have written the last chapter by to morrow evening,' completed action, not past action, is expressed by the tense *to have written*]

15 Is any alteration required in the following sentence?—'He says he isn't going to go for it'

[There is nothing formally wrong in saying 'going to go,' but the use of 'going,' in the sense of 'about,' to signify an action on the point of commencement, is avoided with the verb 'go' itself, though its employment might be defended more logically in this context than in such expressions as 'to be going to sit still,' 'to be going to stay here,' for if we continue to 'sit' and to 'stay,' we do not 'go' at all, and in saying that we do there is a contradiction in terms]

CHAPTER XVII

Auxiliary and Defective Verbs

174 The Auxiliary Verbs, which supply the deficiencies of inflexions and enable us to mark distinctions of Voice, Mood, and Tense, in the conjugation of a verb, are these — *be*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, and *do*

Be is used (1) as a Voice Auxiliary, forming with the Past Participle of transitive verbs the Passive 'I *am beaten*,' 'to *be beaten*' and (2) as a Tense Auxiliary, forming the Imperfect Tenses in both voices 'I *am* beating,' 'I *am* being beaten'

Notice that, with the Past Participle of certain Intransitive verbs, *be* forms the Perfect Active 'I *am* come,' 'He *is* gone,' 'It *is* fallen' See p 137

Have is a Tense Auxiliary and forms the Perfect Tenses both Active and Passive 'I *have* beaten,' 'I *have* been beaten,' 'I *had* beaten,' 'I shall *have* been beaten'

Shall and **will** form the Future Tenses of the Indicative Mood, Active and Passive 'I *shall* beat,' 'He *will* be beaten,' 'They *will* be beating,' 'We *shall* have been beaten'

May and **might, should** and **would**, are used as signs of the Subjunctive 'Strive that you *may* succeed,' 'He strove that he *might* succeed,' 'I *should* be glad,' 'This *would* seem to be the case'

Do is used as an auxiliary in negative and interrogative sentences. 'I *do* not believe this,' '*Do* you believe this?'

We shall briefly discuss these verbs in turn.

175 **Be** is a defective verb, and its conjugation contains forms derived from three roots which we see in *am*, *was*, *be*. *Am* is the only form of a verb in English that retains the sign of the first person, *m*, which stands for *me* The *t* in *art* is the sign of the second person, as in *shalt*, *wilt* *Is* has dropped its ending *-th* compare German *ist*, Latin *est* *Are* is a Danish word which has taken the place of the Old English form of the third person plural The simple tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods have been given on p 140

Be is used as—

1 A Notional Verb, with a meaning of its own, signifying 'to exist,' when we say, 'God *is*,' 'There *was* a Palmerston'

2 A Copula, connecting the terms of a proposition 'The boy *is* lazy,' 'A griffin *is* an imaginary beast' This account of *is* belongs to logic rather than to grammar however in the language of grammar we should describe *is* here as a verb of Incomplete Predication

3 An Auxiliary of Voice and Tense 'He *is* beaten,' 'He *is* beating,' 'He *is* come'

176 **Have** shows contraction in some of its forms,—*hast* for *havest*, *has* for *haves*, *had* for *haved* It is used as—

1 A Notional Verb, meaning 'to possess,' and then admits of a passive use 'This suggestion has long been *had* in mind'

2 An Auxiliary of Tense to form the Perfects 'He *has* written a letter,' 'He will *have* finished his work,' 'They *had* missed the train.' On this construction see p 147

177 **Shall** was originally a past tense, meaning 'I have owed,' hence, 'I must pay,' 'I am under an obligation, or necessity' The German word for 'debt,' *Schuld*, shows the same root The idea of obligation is still conveyed in such expressions as 'You *should* do your duty,' 'He *should* not say so' *Shall* acquired the sense of a present, and a weak past was then formed from it, but the absence of the ending *-s* from the third person singular *shall* is due to the fact that it was formerly a past tense The same circumstance explains the forms *can*, *may*, *will*, *must*, in the third singular, instead of *cans*, *mays*, *wills*, *musts* Compare these forms [1]

PRESENT

Sing	1	shall	will	can	may
	2	shal-t	wil t	can st	may (e)st
	3	shall	will	can	may
Pl	1, 2, 3	shall	will	can	may

PAST

Sing 1, 3, *Pl*	1, 2, 3	should	would	could	might
Sing	2	should(e)st	would(e)st	could(e)st	might(e)st

178 **Will** as an auxiliary contains only the tenses given above As an independent, notional verb it can be conjugated regularly throughout 'I did this because you *willed* it so,' 'It has been *willed* by the authorities' Old English had a negative form *nill*, meaning 'will not,' as Latin has *volo* and *nolo* *Nill* survives in the adverb *willy-nilly*, *i e will he, nill he*,—'whether he will or won't'

179 **Shall** and will express the contrast between doing a thing under compulsion from outside and doing a thing from one's own inclination Used as auxiliaries they express (1) futurity, (2) determination To express futurity, *shall* is the auxiliary of the first person, *will* of the second and third To express determination, *will* is the auxiliary of the first

[1] Low's *English Language*, p 143

person, *shall* of the second and third More will be said on the subject of this distinction in dealing with the Syntax of these verbs An Englishman never uses them wrongly an Irishman or a Scotchman seldom uses them without tripping Why was it absurd of the Irishman in the water to say, according to the venerable story, 'I will be drowned and nobody shall save me'? Because 'I will' and 'nobody shall' indicate the resolution, or determination, of the speaker, and not simple futurity

180 **May** formerly ended in *g*, which is still written, though not sounded, in **might** As a Notional Verb it expresses permission, 'You *may* go out for a walk,' or possibility, 'He *may* pass his examination' in the latter case, emphasis is usually laid upon the word As an Auxiliary it occurs as a sign of the subjunctive mood 'Give him a book that he *may* amuse himself,' 'They have locked the door so that he *may* not get out'

181 **Must** was a past tense but is now used as a present indicative It has no inflexions but can be used of all persons It expresses the idea of necessity 'You *must* work,' 'I *must* get that book,' 'This *must* be the case'

182. **Can** was the past tense of a verb meaning 'to know' compare the German, *kennen*, 'to know,' and the English, *con*, 'to learn', also *cunning*, originally 'knowing' What a man has learnt, he is able to do, so *can* came to signify 'to be able'

The *l* in *could* deserves particular notice It has no business to be there, but has been inserted owing to a mistaken notion of analogy with *should* and *would*, in which words the *l* is rightly present as part of the roots, *shall* and *will* *Uncouth*, 'unknown,' and so 'odd,' or 'awkward,' shows the correct spelling without the *l*

183 **Dare** is (1) an Intransitive Verb, meaning 'I venture,' and (2) a Transitive Verb, meaning 'I challenge'

(1) The Intransitive *dare* was originally a past tense which came to be treated as a present, and a past tense *durst* was then formed from it The *s* of *durst* is part of the stem, and not of the inflexion of the second person singular, which would be *durstest* As *dare* was a past tense, the third singular of the present indicative properly takes no *-s*, 'He *dare* not say so' But the Intransitive Verb has been confused with the Transitive, and before an Infinitive with *to* the form *dares* is used 'He actually *dares* to say so'

(2) The Transitive Verb is regularly conjugated 'He *dared* me to do this'

184. **Ought** was originally the past tense of the verb *owe* which meant, first, 'to have,' and then 'to have as a duty,' 'to be under an obligation' Shakespeare often uses *owe* in the sense of *own*, or 'possess' It seems a little odd that 'I *owe* a thousand pounds' might signify in the Elizabethan age either 'I possess a thousand pounds,' or 'I am a thousand pounds in debt,' but our modern words *own* and *owe* express the same contrast, and the notion of possession is the older meaning of the two As *ought* is now used with the sense of a present, we have to express past obligation by altering the tense of the dependent infinitive Thus we render *non debet hoc facere*, 'he ought not to do this,' *non debuit hoc facere*, 'he oughtn't to have done this,' which is less defensible logically than the vulgar form of expression, 'he hadn't ought to do this'

185 **Need** is used without the final *s* in the third singular present, when it means 'to be under the necessity' 'He *need* not go' The reason for the omission is not clear, as *need* was not originally a past tense which has acquired a present force. Hence we cannot explain the absence

of the *s* from *need* as we explain its absence from *can*, *may*, *shall*, *will*, *dare*

186 **Do** represents two verbs originally distinct *Do*, meaning 'to be good for' (Latin *valere*), which occurs in such expressions as 'This will *do* nicely,' 'How d'ye *do*?' had no connexion originally with the *do* of general use, 'to make, perform,' Latin *facere* The former verb was confused however in its conjugation with *do*, meaning 'make,' and assumed its inflexions, *did*, *done*

Do (Latin *facio*) forms compounds, *don*, 'to do on,' 'to put on,' of clothing *doff*, 'to take off' '*douse*' or '*dout*, 'to put out,' of a light or fire. *dup*, 'to do up,' or 'fasten,' of a door

In the Present Tense, *doest*, *doeth* have contracted forms *dost*, *doth*

The uses of **do** are important.

1 As a Notional Verb, meaning 'make, perform' 'He did his work'

2 As an Auxiliary—

(*a*) in place of the present or past indefinite 'I do repent' for 'I repent', 'He did rejoice' for 'He rejoiced', 'They did eat' for 'They ate' The auxiliary *do* is here unemphatic.

(*b*) to emphasize our meaning. 'I *do* think so,' 'He *did* try hard', 'They *did* eat'

(*c*) in interrogative sentences '*Do* you think so?' '*Did* he go?'

(*d*) in negative sentences 'He *does* not think so', 'I *did* not go'

The verb dependent on the auxiliary is in the infinitive mood

3 As a substitute for other verbs, except 'be' 'He reads more than you *do* (read)'; 'I said I wouldn't take the

money and I *did*n't (take it)', 'You play well and so *does* (play) your brother'

187 The following verbs are practically obsolete

Wit, '*to know*,' had its Present Tense *wot*, and Past Tense *wist*, without inflexions marking person 'I'll find Romeo to comfort you I *wot* well where he is', 'He *wist* not what to say' The infinitive *to wit* now signifies 'namely'

Worth is all that remains of an old verb signifying *to be* or *become* 'Woe *worth* the chase, woe *worth* the day' means 'Woe betide,' or 'befal'

Quoth is a Past Tense, the Present of which appears in the compound *bequeath* It occurs now only in the first and third persons singular and always precedes the pronoun '*quoth* I,' '*quoth* he'

Questions

1 Explain the term *Copula* Make the *copula* explicit in the sentence 'The fire burns'

[The word *copula* belongs to Logic rather than to Grammar In Logic, the proposition 'Man is mortal' would be described as consisting of two terms and a copula the term *man* is the subject, the term *mortal* is the predicate, and the word *is*, which connects the two, is the copula In Grammar, *mortal* is not the predicate, but together with *is* it forms the predicate To bring the sentence 'The fire burns' into the form of the proposition in Logic we must say 'The fire *is* burning' We have then made the copula explicit]

2 Explain the meaning of *subject*, *predicate*, and *copula*, and point out each of them and their expansions in the following sentence —

'Is this a dagger that I see before me?'

3 Give in outline the history of the Auxiliary Verbs

Discuss the following constructions —

(1) I did come
(2) I have come
(3) I ought to come
(4) I ought to have come

CHAPTER XVIII

Adverbs

188 An Adverb is a word which modifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb

Verbs usually indicate an action, and this action may be performed in various ways and in different circumstances These variations in the conditions under which the action takes place are expressed by adverbs Thus the action asserted in the sentence 'He bowled' is described as limited or modified, as regards the time when it occurred, if I say 'yesterday', as regards the place, if I say 'here', as regards the manner, if I say 'badly' The vagueness of the statement 'He bowled' has been in large measure removed when I say 'Yesterday he bowled here badly' Just as adjectives limit the application of nouns to things, so adverbs limit the application of verbs to actions Just as the words 'clever boy' are applicable to fewer objects than the word 'boy,' so the words 'bowled yesterday' are applicable to fewer actions than the word 'bowled'

Again, Adjectives denote attributes, and these attributes are such as, in many instances, but by no means in all, vary in degree. One way of indicating this variation is by comparison another is by the use of adverbs which denote degree If the reader will refer to the chapter on the Inflexion of Adjectives, he will see that the Demonstrative

Adjectives, *e g this, that, first, second,* do not admit of Comparison at all, that the same thing is true of the definite Quantitative Adjectives, like *none, both,* and the Cardinal Numerals, and that even of the Qualitative Adjectives there are several which cannot be compared Hence it is only to *some* adjectives that adverbs can be applied Moreover it is only *some* adverbs which are applicable to adjectives Adverbs of time, place, manner, cannot be used to qualify adjectives, though they qualify verbs The same remarks apply to the qualification of adverbs by other adverbs We can say '*very* bad,' '*very* badly,' but there is no meaning in saying '*here* bad,' '*hither* badly,' '*anyhow* bad,' '*then* badly,' for though these words may possibly occur together in sentences, reflexion will show that in such cases it is the verb, and not the adjective or adverb, which is modified

189 We may **classify Adverbs** on three different principles

I As Simple and Conjunctive

Most adverbs are simple They contain a meaning in themselves 'He thinks so *now*,' 'I live *here*,' 'We were *greatly* pleased'

A few however have a meaning only when they are taken in connexion with another clause 'He came *when*,' 'I waited *while*,' 'They are sitting *where*,' are meaningless assertions until the sentences are completed 'He came *when* I called,' 'I waited *while* he wrote a letter,' 'They are sitting *where* we left them' These adverbs have the force of conjunctions in joining clauses together Hence they are called **Conjunctive Adverbs** The reader will observe that in possessing this connecting force they resemble the so-called relative pronouns In 'I know *who* it is,' the clauses 'I know,' 'it is,' are united by the relative pronoun *who* in 'I know *where* it is,' they are united by the conjunctive adverb *where*

190 II According to their Meaning

1 **Time** { *when*? now, to day, then, yesterday, soon, to morrow
how long? always, ever
how often? twice, yearly, rarely

2 **Place** { *where*? here, near, below
whence? hence, thence
whither? hither, thither
in what order? secondly, lastly

3 **Degree**, or **Quantity** *how much*? scarcely, quite, little, exactly

4 **Manner**, or **Quality** *how*? - well, ill, and adverbs in *-ly*

5 **Certainty** certainly, not, perhaps

6 **Reason** and **Consequence** why, therefore, thus

191 Yes and No. What are we to call the words *Yes* and *No*?

They are usually classed as Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation, or, to use the term employed in our table, Adverbs of Certainty Yet they are not exactly adverbs, for we cannot use them to modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs· we cannot say 'He *yes* did it,' 'He is *yes* good,' 'He acted *yes* wisely' In some respects they resemble Interjections, but they are not, like them, the expression of a sudden feeling They are really equivalent to sentences 'Did he say so?' 'Yes,'—that is, 'He said so' 'No,'—that is, 'He did not say so' As they are certainly words, we must either make them a new Part of Speech, which seems undesirable, or include them with Adverbs or with Interjections, though different from both The student will of course understand that *no*, meaning *none*, is an adjective '*no* money,' '*no* friends'

192 III According to their Origin or Mode of Formation

The following are the principal modes in which Adverbs are formed

1 Adverbs from Adjectives
2 Adverbs from Nouns in their oblique cases
3 Adverbs from Pronouns.
4 Compound Adverbs

193 Illustrations of these Modes of Formation.

1 (*a*) The usual adverbial suffix is *-ly*, a corruption of *like* so, 'godlike' became 'godly'

(*b*) In Old English, adverbs were formed from adjectives by adding *-e* *fast-e, hard e* This suffix disappeared along with many of our other inflexions, and adjective and adverb were no longer distinguishable in form 'A *fast* rider' 'He rode *fast*'

2 The comparative and superlative forms of such adverbs as are referred to above in 1 (*b*) are the same as those of the adjectives 'A *faster* rider' 'He rode *faster*'

The comparative and superlative forms of several adjectives which have irregular comparison are used adverbially also See p 111

With these exceptions, *more* and *most* are generally employed in the comparison of adverbs

3 Relics of case inflexions appear in some adverbs —

(*a*) genitive ending *-s* is present in *needs, unawares*, and disguised in *once, twice*

(*b*) dative plural ending *um* survives in *seldom* and in the archaic *whilom*, 'formerly'

(*c*) instrumental case is seen in *why, the* (in 'the more the better,' originally *thi*), and *how*

4 The survival of inflexions is illustrated by the adverbs which are derived from the pronouns *he, who*, and the demonstrative adjective *the*

Stem	Suffix *-ther*	Locative case	Genitive case	Accusative case	Instrumental case
he	hither	here	hence	——	—— ——
who	whither	where	whence	when	why, how
the	thither	there	thence	then	the, thus

5 In a few cases a compound adverb is formed from two words written in one *meanwhile, straightway, yesterday, thereupon, herein, hitherto, aboard* (where *a* is a corruption of *on*), *perchance, elsewhere, whensoever*.

194 The following points deserve attention

(*a*) Words belonging to other parts of speech are sometimes used as adverbs —

Nouns for adverbs 'He went *home*,' 'I don t mind *a rap*,' 'The wound was *skin* deep'

Pronouns for adverbs '*somewhat* steep,' '*none* the worse'

Verbs for adverbs 'It went *crash* through the window,' '*Smack* went the whip'

(*b*) Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns as if the adverbs were adjectives 'The *then* prime minister,' 'The *above* remarks,' 'My arrival *here*,' 'His journey *abroad*'

(*c*) Is there any difference of meaning between 'He arrived *safe*' and 'He arrived *safely*'?

The adjective *safe* marks a quality of the agent *he*, the adverb *safely* marks the mode of the action *arrived* If his horse ran away, and he narrowly escaped being upset, he might arrive 'safe,' but he certainly would not arrive 'safely,' that is, 'in a safe manner'

(*d*) Is any correction required in—'It not only smells but tastes sweetly'?

Sweetly is right *sweet* is right too With regard to this alternative use of adverbs and adjectives in certain connexions, we may say that the adverb qualifies the action indicated by the verb and the adjective denotes a quality of the agent But we employ the adverb or the adjective without giving any heed to this subtle distinction Whether it is adverb or adjective or both that we make use of, seems to be very much a matter of idiom We say 'I feel queer,' 'He seems disagreeable,' 'You look unpleasant,' using adjectives We say 'I ride clumsily,' 'He speaks rapidly,' 'You play capitally,' using adverbs And we say 'I speak plain, or plainly,' 'He looks splendid, or splendidly,' 'You came quick, or quickly,' using adjectives or adverbs indifferently

Questions

1. What difficulty would arise in conversation, if there were (*a*) no adjectives, (*b*) no adverbs?

[Illustrate the difficulty by an example of this sort By the aid of adjectives we can distinguish different varieties of things, each of which distinctions would require a separate noun, if we had no adjectives Thus, if we take *wine* as our noun, and *good*, *old*, and *red*, as its limiting adjectives, with these four words we can mark eight distinctions viz, (putting initial letters to represent the words) W, GW, OW, RW, GOW, GRW, ORW, GORW, and for these eight distinctions we should need eight nouns This gives a very inadequate idea however of the economy of words which adjectives enable us to effect —For if we take the same three adjectives *good*, *old*, and *red*, and change the noun from *wine* to *velvet*, we shall need another eight nouns to express the varieties of *velvet*, another eight would be required to express the varieties of *curtains*, and so on. The three nouns *wine*, *velvet*, and *curtains*, in combination with the adjectives *good*, *old* and *red*, would need twenty-four words instead of six

The same point might be illustrated as regards verbs and adverbs By combining *write, ride, walk,* with *gracefully, slowly, well,* we express by means of six words twenty-four distinctions If we had no adverbs and wished to mark these distinctions, we should do so either (1) by using phrases composed of a preposition and a noun, *e g* 'with grace,' 'in a slow manner,' 'in a good style,' or (2) by adding twenty one verbs to our vocabulary]

2 Parse the word *above* in the following sentence —'The above remarks, as we noticed above, apply above all to the third class '

3 What parts of speech may an adverb modify?

Parse fully the words *alone, almost,* in each of the following sentences —

(*a*) He almost succeeded alone
(*b*) He succeeded almost alone
(*c*) He, alone, almost succeeded

[As explained at the beginning of the chapter, adverbs limit, or modify, verbs and adjectives, words expressing actions and attributes they also qualify other adverbs As participles are verbal adjectives, participles admit of adverbial modification '*much* disappointed,' '*twice* blessed ' The following are exceptional uses of the adverb In 'Yours *faithfully*' the pronoun is modified, as it expresses a quality In '*fully* master of the language' a noun is modified, but the noun is used like a verb to express an attribute 'He was *fully* master of the language' means 'He had *fully* mastered the language ' In 'I am *entirely* at your disposal,' 'He died *far* from his native land,' the adverb looks as if it modified a preposition, but it really modifies the whole adverbial phrase See Bain's *Higher Eng Gram* p 66, Angus' *Handbook of the English Tongue,* p 225]

4 Mention two adverbs of place, two of time, and two of degree, and form adverbs from *north, other, three, whole*

5 Explain the use of *right* in—'Right against the stream they pulled '

6 Apply your definition of *adverb* to the adverb in the phrase 'Quite within my recollection '

[It appears at first sight as if the adverb *quite* qualified the preposition *within* But this is not the case It qualifies the whole phrase *within-my recollection* What sort of phrase is 'within my recollection'?]

CHAPTER XIX.

Prepositions

195 A Preposition is a word which is used with a noun or pronoun to show its relation to some other word in the sentence.

Case was defined as the form of a noun or pronoun by which we show its relation to some other word in the sentence But the relations in which a noun may stand are far more numerous than those which the supply of cases, even in an inflexional language like Latin, will enable us to represent And in a non-inflexional language like our own, we are almost entirely dependent on Prepositions for the means of expressing these relations Thus the Romans, like ourselves, had recourse to prepositions when they said 'before the town,' 'against the town,' 'through the town,' 'across the town,' *ante urbem*, *contra urbem*, *per urbem*, *trans urbem*, although case-endings served their purpose in some instances in which we have to fall back on prepositions, and they could say *moenia urbis*, 'the walls *of* the town,' *dat agros urbi*, 'he gives lands *to* the town'

196 A preposition and noun together form a phrase which is equivalent to either an adjective or an adverb So, 'a statesman *of eminence*' is 'an *eminent* statesman', 'a town *in Holland*' is 'a *Dutch* town', 'a man *without education*' is 'an *uneducated* man' The combination here is adjectival In the following examples it is adverbial *by force*, *in a*

curious fashion, with courage, at the present time, from this spot for these phrases we might substitute the adverbs *forcibly, curiously, courageously, now, hence*

197 In the language of grammar we speak of the preposition as 'governing' the noun or pronoun to which it is attached In Greek, or Latin, or German, the student finds it a serious business to learn the cases which follow the various prepositions, but in modern English, owing to the loss of inflexions, we are spared any trouble of this kind The noun governed by the preposition is 'in the objective case,' and the form of the objective is identical with the form of the nominative In the pronouns the differences of form are limited to the pronouns of the First, Second, and Third Persons, and to the Relative *who*

Notice however that, though we speak of the noun as governed by the preposition, it is not necessary that the noun should come after the preposition The preposition is often put at the end of the sentence So, we may say 'This is the boy *whom* I gave it *to*,' '*What* are you talking *about?*' and the construction is the same as if we had said 'This is the boy *to whom* I gave it,' '*About what* are you talking?'

198 Prepositions might be classified, as Adverbs were classified in the preceding chapter, according to their meaning But such a classification would be out of place in an elementary book The relations in which things stand to other things are so various that the prepositions expressing these relations would require a large number of classes for their arrangement Or, if the number of classes were small, the names of the classes would necessarily be so vague that the student would attach to them no clear and distinct meaning Then again, the classification would be complicated by the fact that the same preposition is used in widely different senses and would therefore have its place in

several groups As an illustration of this, let us notice some of the relations indicated by the preposition *by* We can use it to mark time, 'by day', or instrument, 'stunned by a blow', or agency, 'stabbed by Brutus', or manner, 'hung by the neck', or measure, 'sold by the pound', or place, 'he lives by the river', or as an appeal, 'I beg you by whatever you hold dear', and these are not all of its meanings

199 We may also classify Prepositions according to their Origin.

(1) Some are Simple *at, by, to, up, on*

(2) Others are Compound *throughout, within, upon, into*

(3) A few are Participles *considering, regarding, concerning, during, pending*

200 The use of *considering*, or *regarding*, as a true participle may be seen in such sentences as these 'Considering the temptation, they let him off,' *i e* 'They, considering the temptation, let him off' 'Regarding your conduct, I am shocked,' *i e* 'I, regarding your conduct, am shocked' But when we say, 'Considering the temptation, he was allowed to get off,' *considering* means 'in consideration of' and has become a preposition when we say, 'Regarding your statement, you have been misinformed,' *regarding* means 'with regard to' and has become a preposition The use of *concerning* as a preposition occurs in the A V in the passage, 'Now concerning the collection even so do ye,' (1 Cor xvi 1) its participial origin is seen in such an expression as this, 'Your remarks concerning me are unfounded' Commercial men are quite needlessly pressing the participle 'referring to' into their service as a preposition, and their letters begin in this objectionable fashion 'Referring to yours of yesterday lard has gone up' Here *referring to* is used as a preposition signifying 'with reference to' and is no longer a participle if it were, the construction would be 'lard referring to your letter,' which is absurd

Some of these forms may be explained as originally Absolute constructions of the participle '*during* the day' arose from 'the day during,' or 'lasting', '*pending* the verdict,' from 'the verdict pending,' or 'being in suspense' '*notwithstanding* the storm,' from 'the storm not withstanding,' or 'obstructing' A similar explanation applies to *except*, which springs from the Latin past participle 'all *except* John' was

originally 'all, John having been excepted' *Save*, as a preposition, exhibits the same absolute construction the word is here an adjective equivalent to *safe* So, 'all, *save* one' was 'all, one being safe'

201 The beginner will find little difficulty in distinguishing between the functions of the same word as Preposition and as Adverb, if he remembers that - a **Preposition is used with a noun or its substitute and governs it** where there is no noun thus governed, the word in question is not a preposition A few examples will make this clear the following words are used as

Prepositions	**Adverbs**
He is *on* the roof	Put it *on*
Take it *off* the table	Take it *off*
He is gone *down* the town	He is gone *down.*
It lies *beyond* the river	It lies *beyond*
We went *along* the bank	Go *along*

QUESTIONS

1 Give the definition and derivation of (*a*) *pronoun*, (*b*) *preposition* Shew how your answers apply to the words printed in italics in the following —

'To be, or not to be,—*that* is the question'
'They had nothing to amuse themselves *with*'

['Pronoun' from Latin, *pro*, 'for,' *nomen*, 'name' 'Preposition' from *prae*, 'in front', *positus*, 'placed', not because prepositions are usually placed before nouns, for they often come after them, but because in Greek and Latin they were prefixed to verbs to form compounds The derivation of the name is only a source of embarrassment to beginners, as it suggests order in a sentence, with which it has nothing to do

Remember that the infinitive is equivalent to a noun What nouns can we substitute for 'to be,' 'not to be'?]

2 Specify the notions expressed by the preposition *on* in the following examples of its use —'It rests *on* the earth'—'Weston is *on* the sea'—'He lectures *on* medicine'—'We returned *on* Saturday'—'The dew descended *on* the parched earth'—'He made an attack *on* the enemy'—'He started *on* receiving the telegram'—'He gave up business *on* account of his health' [See Bain's *Higher English Grammar*, pp 90—1]

3 Construct sentences illustrating some of the principal uses of *for* and *of*

4 In the following quotations from Shakespeare substitute prepositions in accordance with modern idiom[1] —

'Have we eaten *on* the insane root?'
'Steal *forth* thy father's house'
'From *out* the fiery portal of the East.'
'Sounds of music creep *in* our ears'
'Our fears *in* Banquo stick deep'
'We'll deliver you *of* your great danger.'
'A proper man *of* mine honour'
'A plague *of* all cowards!'
'I stay here *on* my bond'
'Prepare yourself *to* death'
'The lady Beatrice hath a quarrel *to* you.'
'I live *with* bread like you'

5 Express with the aid of a preposition the idea represented by the first part of these compound nouns —*gravy-spoon, steam ship, mail ship, land breeze, sea captain, Convalescent-Home, ground swell, play-ground, life preserver, wheel barrow*

6 What idea was originally represented by prepositions in English?

[Relations in space These purely local meanings were then extended to express relations of time and of cause. So, *of* and *off* were once the same word, *by* meant 'close to', *for* meant 'before' See Mason's *English Grammar*, pp 116—9]

7 In the following phrases, is the use of the preposition inconsistent with its definition?—(*a*) *in short, after all, at last, for better, for worse* (*b*) *till now, for ever, since then, from here*

[In (*a*) the preposition is joined to adjectives which are used without the noun which they limit In (*b*) the preposition is joined to adverbs employed as nouns *now* is equivalent to 'the present time,' *ever*, to 'all time' When these words are parsed, the adjectives should be described as adjectives used for nouns, or as adjectives with the ellipsis of nouns, and the adverbs as adverbs used for nouns]

8 Write down the prepositions in the following lines and make short sentences to illustrate different uses of each —

'As when upon a tranced summer night,
Those green robed senators of mighty woods,
Tall oaks, branch charmed by the earnest stars,
Dream, and so dream all night without a stir'

[1] Selected from Abbott's *Shakespearian Grammar*

CHAPTER XX

Conjunctions and Interjections.

202 A Conjunction is a word, other than a relative pronoun or conjunctive adverb, which joins words and sentences.

All conjunctions can join sentences together, but all words which join sentences are not conjunctions 'This is the man who stole the money' contains two clauses, 'This is the man (he) stole the money', the two clauses are united by the relative pronoun *who* and form one complex sentence. The reader will remember that the distinguishing mark of a relative pronoun is this, that it has the force of a conjunction But it is not itself a conjunction Again, 'I know where he lives' contains two clauses, 'I know (the fact) he lives there', the two clauses are united by the conjunctive adverb *where* and form one complex sentence

203 What do Conjunctions join,—Sentences, or Words, or both?

Conjunctions usually connect sentences even when they appear to connect only words 'John *and* Mary are good players' is an elliptical or abbreviated way of saying 'John is a good player,' 'Mary is a good player' But in some cases *and* connects words only, and there is no contraction or abridgement of two separate sentences 'John and Mary are a handsome couple' cannot be resolved into 'John

is a handsome couple,' 'Mary is a handsome couple' 'Two and two make four' is not a compact way of saying 'Two makes four,' 'Two makes four' With the exception however of the occasional use of *and* to join words, conjunctions join sentences Thus 'He was poor but honest' contains two statements, 'He was poor he was honest' 'He is neither a knave nor a fool' means 'He is not a knave he is not a fool' 'He is either a knave or a fool' means 'He is either a knave, or he is a fool'

204. **Conjunctions are classified as (1) Co-ordinating and (2) Subordinating.**

(1) **Co-ordinating** Conjunctions join co-ordinate or independent clauses *e g and, but, either or, neither nor*

(2) **Subordinating** Conjunctions join a dependent clause to the principal clause *e g that, after, till, because, though, if.*

205 The reader must now prepare himself to grapple with a part of the subject which will present greater difficulties and call for the exercise of more intelligence than any of the problems which he has hitherto encountered in the study of grammar Before going further, we must explain the meaning of the terms *co-ordinate, dependent, clause,* which have been introduced into the definitions of conjunctions and classes of conjunctions The discussion of these words belongs indeed to syntax rather than to etymology But we have reached the threshold of syntax and may cross the threshold without straying far beyond the strict limits of our present subject, for it is only by saying now some of the things which would more properly be said in the concluding chapters of the book, that we can hope to make the treatment of conjunctions intelligible

A **Sentence** is a collection of words by which we say something about a thing The word which stands for the

thing about which we make the assertion is called the **Subject** of the sentence. The word by which we make the assertion about the thing is called the **Predicate**

If a sentence contains only one subject and one finite verb, it is a **Simple** sentence 'The general was knighted,' 'He told me this,' 'He gave me a contribution,' are simple sentences

If a sentence contains two or more independent clauses joined by co ordinating conjunctions, it is a **Compound** sentence 'The general was knighted *and* presented with the freedom of the city,' 'He *neither* told me this, *nor* did he hint it,' 'He gave me a contribution *but* he grudged it,' are compound sentences, each of which contains two parts entirely independent These two parts might form separate sentences without affecting the sense of the compound sentence

But if a sentence contains two clauses, one of which is dependent on the other, it is a **Complex** sentence· 'The general *who won the victory* was knighted,' 'He told me that *the prisoner had escaped*,' 'He gave me a contribution *because he approved of the object*,' are complex sentences The words in italics are sentences. they contain a finite verb, and they make sense But they are not independent sentences they occupy the place of an adjective, a noun, or an adverb, in relation to the rest of the sentence of which they form a part. Hence they are called **Subordinate Clauses**

Thus in the sentence 'The general who won the victory was knighted,' the clause 'who won the victory' is equivalent to *victorious* and limits the application of the noun 'general' It is an adjectival clause.

In the sentence 'He told me that the prisoner had escaped,' the clause 'the prisoner had escaped' is equivalent to 'the fact,' or 'this,' or 'the rumour' *The fact*, or *this*, or *the rumour* is a noun, or its equivalent, a pronoun

Hence the clause, as it takes the place of a noun, is a noun clause

In the sentence 'He gave me a contribution because he approved of the object,' the clause 'he approved of the object' modifies the application of the verb *gave*, stating *why* he gave it. The words by which we limit the application of verbs are adverbs. 'He gave me a contribution approvingly, or cordially, or readily,' would express, approximately though not exactly, the same thing as 'He gave me a contribution because he approved of the object' Such a clause as this, since it takes the place of an adverb, is an adverbial clause

The sentences which form parts of an entire sentence we shall call **clauses** 'The general won the victory and was knighted' is a Compound sentence consisting of the two co-ordinate or independent clauses 'The general won the victory,' 'The general was knighted' 'The general who won the victory was knighted' is a Complex sentence consisting of a principal clause, 'The general was knighted,' and a subordinate adjectival clause, 'who won the victory,' referring to 'general' in the principal clause 'The general was knighted because he won the victory' is a Complex sentence consisting of a principal clause, 'The general was knighted,' and a subordinate adverbial clause, 'because he won the victory,' modifying 'was knighted'

206 No rule of thumb can be supplied which shall enable the student to determine whether a subordinate clause is an adjective clause, noun clause, or adverb-clause, without the exercise of his wits The same collection of words may be adjectival, substantival, or adverbial, in three different complex sentences Take the words, 'where the battle was fought' A beginner, recognising an adverb in the first word 'where,' might jump to the conclusion that a clause which begins with an adverb must be an adverbial clause But the nature of the clause is not to be settled in this way we must look at the clause in its relation to the principal clause and see what sort of work it does,—whether it does the work of an adjective, of a noun, or of an adverb Observe its different functions in these three complex sentences

1. 'The spot where the battle was fought is unknown'
2 'Where the battle was fought is unknown'
3 'I live where the battle was fought'

In (1), *where the battle was fought* is adjectival, limiting 'spot', in like manner we might say 'the *exact* spot is unknown'

In (2), it is a noun clause, equivalent to 'The *spot* is unknown,' 'The *fact* is unknown,' '*It* is unknown'

In (3), it is adverbial, modifying the verb 'live,' just as an adverb would modify it in the sentence 'I live *there*'

When the reader has mastered the distinction between compound and complex sentences and between the three kinds of subordinate clauses, one or other of which every complex sentence contains, analysis will present very few difficulties to him But his analysis of complex sentences will generally be wrong, if he attempts the task without an intelligent grasp of the principles which have been stated above From this digression into syntax we must now return to the subject of conjunctions from which we may seem to have wandered far

207 The reader should now be able readily to grasp our meaning when we say that **co-ordinating** conjunctions are those which **unite co-ordinate clauses**, and that **subordinating** conjunctions are those which **join subordinate clauses to the principal clause** of a complex sentence.

The subordinate clauses which a subordinating conjunction introduces are noun clauses or adverbial clauses Adjective-clauses are attached to the principal clause by a relative pronoun or by a relative adverb, as, 'The general *who* won the victory was knighted,' which is equivalent to 'The victorious general was knighted', 'The house *where* nobody lives is to be pulled down,' which is equivalent to 'The empty house is to be pulled down' Noun-clauses are generally introduced by *that*, and occur especially after verbs of saying, thinking, believing, asking, hoping, seeing, and others of similar import 'I say that *he did it*,' 'I think that *this is so*' But *that* is not essential to a noun clause thus the following clauses in italics are noun-clauses, 'I see *how you did it*,' '*When he did it* is not clear,' 'He asked *if I did it*,' 'We heard *you had gone*'

208 The subordinating conjunctions by which adverbial clauses are introduced may be classified according to the various modes of dependence which they indicate, as—

1 Conditional—*if, unless.*

2 Concessive—*though*

3 Temporal—*after, till, while, as*

4 Consecutive, marking Result—*that* ('so that')

5. Final, marking Purpose—*that* ('in order that'), *lest*

6 Causal—*because, since, as.*

209 **Conjunctions have grown out of other parts of speech.**

Whether the conjunction *that* was originally the demonstrative pronoun or the relative pronoun is not quite clear 'I know that you did it' may be representative of 'You did it I know *that*,' or of 'I know that, *that* you did it'[1] *Both*, used with *and*, is the same word as the adjective, *either*, used with *or*, is the same word as the distributive pronoun *Than, though, while*, were once adverbs *Before, after, since*, were once prepositions and were followed by 'that' To distinguish Conjunctions from Prepositions is easy. Conjunctions never govern a case. To distinguish Conjunctions from Adverbs is often difficult, and our remarks on the distinction shall be reserved till we are dealing with the Syntax of Adverbs and Conjunctions (See p 255)

210 **Conjunctions which occur in pairs are called Correlatives** *both and, either or, so as, so that, as so, whether or*, are examples of Correlative Conjunctions

[1] See Mason's *English Grammar*, § 290, and Gow's *Method of English*, p 168

211. Interjections.

An Interjection is a sound which expresses an emotion but does not enter into the construction of the sentence.

As Interjections have no connexion with the grammatical structure of the sentence, their claim to recognition among the Parts of Speech is a small one *O! ah! pooh! psha!* like the barking of a dog or the lowing of a calf, are noises, not words If there were any advantage in classifying these sounds, we might group them according to the feelings which they express, as Interjections denoting joy, disgust, surprise, vexation, and so forth

Interjections which are corruptions or contractions of words, or elliptical forms of expression, may be referred to the parts of speech to which they originally belong So, *adieu* is 'to God (I commend you),' *goodbye* is 'God be with you,' *hail!* is 'be thou hale' or 'healthy,' *law!* or *lawks!* is a corruption of 'Lord!' and *marry!* of 'Mary!'

CHAPTER XXI

Compounds and Derivatives

212. If we were to read down a column of words on a page of an English dictionary, we should find that the great majority of these words have been formed from other words, either by joining two words together, or by adding to a word a sound which by itself is without meaning Thus from *man* in combination with other words there have been made *freeman*, *mankind*, *midshipman*, *footman*, while, by the addition of an element which has no significance alone, *manly*, *unman*, *mannikin*, have come into existence The former process is called **Composition**, the latter **Derivation** words made by the former process are called **Compounds**, by the latter, **Derivatives** The terms 'Derivation' and 'Derivative' are not well chosen, as their meaning is here narrowed down from the sense in which they are generally used When we speak of the *derivation* of a word we usually signify the source from which it comes thus we say that *phenomenon* is of Greek 'derivation' and *vertex* of Latin 'derivation,' though as these words have been transferred ready-made from foreign languages they are not, in this special sense, English derivatives at all But the employment of the terms *derivation* and *derivative*, in contrast with the terms *composition* and *compound*, is too well established to allow of our making a change, and the student must therefore bear in mind that when used in this connexion

they indicate an important distinction in the mode of the formation of words

Composition is the formation of a word by joining words together

Derivation is the formation of a word—

(1) by adding a part not significant by itself,

or, **(2) by modifying an existing sound**

The part not significant by itself when attached at the beginning of a word is called a **Prefix**, when attached at the end, a **Suffix**

A Hybrid is a compound or derivative containing elements which come from different languages

213 Unlike Greek and German, modern English does not lend itself readily to the formation of long compounds If the reader cares to turn to his Greek lexicon and to look up the word beginning ὀρθροφοιτο- or the still more formidable λεπαδοτεμαχο-, he will see this facility for making compounds burlesqued by Aristophanes A humourist of our own day, Mark Twain, deals with German compounds in a like playful fashion

In compound words, the first word usually modifies the meaning of the second A *ring finger* is a particular kind of finger, a *finger ring* a particular kind of ring In true grammatical compounds there is usually a change of form or of accent So *spoonful* is a true grammatical compound of *spoon full* *Poorhouse* and *Newport* carry an accent on the first syllable as compounds as separate words each of the two is accented equally Compare 'a poor house by the new port' with 'the poórhouse at Néwport' Words joined by a hyphen with no change of form or of accent are merely printers' compounds

214 **Words disguised in form**

The appearance of some words is deceptive, suggesting as it does that they are compounds when they are not, or

that they contain elements which do not really belong to them Examples of this are seen in *crayfish*, really from *écrevisse*, 'a crab,' and quite unconnected with 'fish' *causeway*, from *chaussée*, *kickshaws* from *quelques-choses*, *goodbye* from *God be with you! shame-faced* for *shamefast*, like *steadfast*[1]

215 **Derivatives are generally formed by means of prefixes or suffixes a few however are formed without the addition of a new sound by the change of an existing sound** Thus from *glass* we get *glaze*, from *sit*, *set*, from *fall*, *fell*, from *drink*, *drench*, from *gold*, *gild* In these cases we have modification but not addition

Prefixes and Suffixes once possessed a meaning and existed as separate words Thus the ending *ly* represents the word *like* *godlike* and *godly* contain elements originally the same, but *godlike* is now described as a compound, and *godly* as a derivative

216 A few of the more important Suffixes are given here for the purpose of illustration They are distinguished according to (1) their *force*, (2) their *origin* In the following list, Suffixes derived from the Romance languages are described as of Classical origin.

NOUN SUFFIXES

Diminutives

(*a*) Of English origin maid *en*, cock e *rel*, pock *et*, lass *ie* or bab *y*, farth *ing* (small *fourth* part), duck-*l ing*, lamb *kin*, thimb *le*, stream *let*, hill *ock*, mead-*ow*

(*b*) Of Classical origin glob *ule*, animal-*cule*, parti-*cle*, mors *el*, violon *cello*, vermi *celli*, rivu-*let*, lanc-*et*, cigar *ette*

Notice that some of the latter group are not English formations the words are diminutives in the foreign language from which we borrowed them, but they are not English diminutives any more than *testatrix* is an English feminine

Diminutives may occasionally express not smallness but (1) endearment, *darling*, *Charlie*, or (2) contempt, *mannikin*, *worldling*

[1] A long and interesting list of words disguised in form is given in Meiklejohn's *English Language*, pp 145—151

Augmentatives express the opposite idea to that expressed by Diminutives

(*a*) English drunk-*ard*, brag-g *art* *Sweetheart* however is probably a compound of *sweet heart*, and not, as some writers have maintained, an augmentative, sweet-*ard*, 'a very sweet one'

(*b*) Classical ball-*oon*, tromb *one* (a big trumpet), milli *on* (a big thousand)

Agent

(*a*) English beg g *ar*, garden *er*, sail *or*

(*b*) Classical act *or*, bombard *ier*, engin *eer*, secret *ary*, (Greek) journal *ist*

Marking feminine gender

(*a*) English spin *ster*, vix *en*

(*b*) Classical govern *ess*, testatr-*ix*, (Greek) hero *ine*

Act, state, quality, are denoted by many suffixes

(*a*) English free *dom*, brother-*hood*, god-*head*, dark-*ness*, friend-*ship*, tru-*th*, gif *t*

(*b*) Classical bond *age*, infam *y*, matri-*mony*, just *ice*, opin *ion*, forti *tude*, liber *ty*, cult *ure*

ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES

Possessing a quality

(*a*) English wretch *ed* The *ed* in 'wretched' is the ending of the past participle, but it is attached to nouns as well as to verbs to form adjectives, as in 'horn *ed*,' 'feather *ed*,' 'kind heart-*ed*' A great outcry was raised some years ago against the words *gifted*, *talented*, *moneyed*, and a few similar adjectives, on the ground that they are formed like participles, but that there are no verbs from which they come If however we can talk of a 'rag g *ed* beggar,' there seems no reason why we should not talk of a 'gift *ed* poet' The further objection may be brought against *talented* and *moneyed* that they are hybrids, since *talent* comes from the Greek and *money* from the Latin But the same objection might be urged against the past participle of every weak verb of foreign origin in the language, from *preached* down to *telegraphed*

Other adjectival endings of English origin occur in the following words quarrel *some*, god *ly*, wood *en*, thirst *y*

(*b*) Classical leg *al*, mund *ane*, lun *ar*, div *ine*, tim-*id*, sens *ible*, frag *ile*

Possessing a quality (i) in a high degree

(*a*) English care *ful* (*b*) Classical verb *ose*, glori *ous*, and (ii) in a low degree (*a*) English black *ish*

VERB SUFFIXES

Causative.

(*a*) English *sweet-en*

(*b*) Classical *magni-fy* (Latin *facio*)

Other verbal suffixes, derived from a Latin source, are seen in *flour-ish* (Latin *floresco*), *facilit-ate* The common ending *-ize*, or *-ise*, is of Greek origin *critic-ize*, *theor-ise*

Frequentative

(*a*) English *bat-t-er* (from *beat*), *crack-le* (from *crack*)

Hybrids As our vocabulary is composed of words from Latin, Greek, and native sources, hybrids are naturally numerous Indeed, as the grammatical forms of our language are almost entirely of English origin, any word from a Latin or Greek source which takes our English inflexions might in strictness be called a hybrid

The term is usually reserved however for words which obtrusively present a combination of different elements such are *bi-gamy* and *bi-cycle*, because *bi(s)* is Latin and the remainder is Greek. *Journal-ist* combines Latin and Greek, *mon-ocular* Greek and Latin, *shepherd-ess* English and French, *grand-father*, French and English, *false-hood*, Latin and English, *un-fortunate*, English and Latin

217 The following are a few of the principal Prefixes, classified as English, Latin, or Greek, according to their origin[1]

ENGLISH

a-, usual meaning 'on' *a-live*, *a-board*

be-, from preposition 'by' (i) changes the meaning of a transitive verb, *be-hold*, *be-set* (ii) converts an intransitive to a transitive, *be-moan*, *be-wail* (iii) has an intensive force, *be-daub*, *be-praise*

for-, not the preposition 'for' (i) intensive force, *for-give* (ii) privative, *for-get*, *for-swear* Notice that *fore-go*, ('to go without') *fore-do*, should be *for-go*, *for-do* the verb *fore-go* means 'to go before'

fore-, as in 'be*fore*'- *fore-tell*, *fore-see*

mis-, with sense of 'a *miss*' *mis-deed*, *mis-take*

un-, (i) meaning 'not' *un-wise*, *un-belief* (ii) marking the reversal of an action, *un-fasten*, *un-wind*

with-, meaning 'against' *with-stand*, *with-draw*

LATIN

a-, **ab-**, **abs-**, 'from' *a-vert*, *ab-rupt*, *abs-tain*

ad-, 'to'. *ad-jective*, variously modified, *e.g. ac-cuse*, *ag-gravate*, *al-ly*, *ap-pear*, *as-size*, *at-tain*, *a-vow*

[1] For complete list see Low's *English Language*, pp 157–164, or Morris' *Historical English Grammar*, Chap xv.

ante, 'before,' *ante* chamber
bi, **bis**, 'twice,' *bi* ped, *bis* cuit
contra-, 'against,' *contra* dict, *counter* march
in-, (1) 'in' *in* fuse, *im* pel, *en*-rol (11) 'not' *in* sensible, *im* possible, *ir* responsible
minus, '*mis* chief,' with meaning of English prefix *mis*, but of different origin
non-, 'not' *non* conformity
per, 'through' *per* secute, *pur* sue, *per*-jure, (compare '*for* swear')
re, 'again,' 'back' *re* cur, *re* turn
super-, 'over' *super* fine, *sur*-vive, *sir* loin
vice, 'instead of' *vice* roy, *vis* count

GREEK

an, **a**, 'not' *an* archy, *a* theist
ana, 'again,' 'back' *ana* logy, *ana* lyse
anti, 'against' *anti* pathy, *ant* agonist In *anti* cipate however we have Latin *ante*
archi-, 'chief' *archi* tect, *arche* type, *arch* bishop
auto, 'self' *auto* biography, *auto* maton.
ek, **ex-**, 'out of' *ec*-logue, *ex* odus
eu, 'well' *eu* logy, *ev* angelical
hyper-, 'beyond' *hyper* bolical
meta, 'change' *meta* phor
mono, 'single' *mono* poly, *mon* arch
pan, **panto**, 'all' *pan* acea, *panto* mime
para, 'beside' *para* graph
syn-, 'with' *syn* od, *syl* lable, *sym* bol

218 Division of Words into Syllables.

A **Syllable** consists of a single vowel sound with or without accompanying consonants It is pronounced by a single effort of the voice *Through* is a single syllable, though it contains seven letters *ideality* with eight letters has five syllables In *through* there is one vowel sound, the long *o* of *cool*, here represented by *ou* in *ideality* there are five distinct vowel sounds, with three consonants dispersed amongst them

There are no hard and fast rules for the division of words into syllables, when a division is necessary in writing In this matter, as also in the matter of punctuation, writers are very much at the mercy of the printers From the nature

of the case, no division can be made in words of one syllable however long *Straight, scratch, drought*, contain only one vowel-sound and must be written and printed entire Two principles should regulate the separation of words of more than one syllable into parts. as far as possible we ought to follow—

(1) the etymology,
(2) the pronunciation

Hence the hyphen is placed between the prefix or suffix and the root of derivatives, and between the constituent parts of compounds *en-large, duch-ess, free-man* But sometimes the division according to pronunciation is at variance with the division according to etymology For example, *orthography, geology*, would be divided thus, if we follow the pronunciation as our guide,—*orthog-raphy, geol-ogy*, whereas their etymology would direct us to divide them thus,—*ortho-graphy, geo-logy* In cases of conflict of this kind it is generally best to place the hyphen consistently with the etymology[1]

QUESTIONS

1 Add to each of the following words the prefix which reverses the meaning —*contented, proper, visible, pleasant, ingenuous, natural*

2 Define the terms *prefix* and *suffix* Illustrate your answer by analysing the following words into their component parts —*believing, darling, forlorn, islet, nethermost, equital, spinster, uncouth*

3 Does the phrase 'Ærated bread' require correction?

['Ærated bread' would be bread made of bronze (Latin *aes, aeris*) What sort of bread is sold at the ABC shops, and whence does it get its name?]

4 Break up the words *mistrustfully, unwholesomeness*, into syllables, and explain how each syllable contributes to the meaning of the words

5 Why are the following words hybrids?—*forbear-ance, duke dom, somnambul-ist, un-just, social ism, master-ship*

[1] See Angus' *Handbook of the English Tongue*, pp 111—2

6 Give the derivation and history of the following words, and mention any case of double meaning, or of change of meaning — *alderman, defeat, drake, idiot, invalid, involve, kaleidoscope, muddle, megrim, monk, orchard, pilgrim, scholar, uncouth*

7 What are the chief constituent elements of the English language?

Give the derivation of the following words, pointing out any change of meaning —*ally, agony, dyspeptic, girl, journal, lord, person, ornithologist, poison, rival, sherry, silly, somersault, telegraph, villain, volume*

8 Give the derivation of the following words, showing from what languages they were taken —*caitiff, cardinal, frenzy, seraph, nightingale, welkin*

9 Give the etymology of the following words —*gazette, tinsel, blame, loyal, archbishop, sheriff*

10 Which is the right place for the hyphen in the following words? Why?—*suit cide* or *suic ide, locom otive* or *loco motive, viad uct* or *via-duct, apo stle* or *apos-tle, epig-ram* or *epi gram, dec line* or *de-cline, sus-pect* or *susp ect, kin dred* or *kind red, lanc et* or *lan cet, mor ning* or *morn ing, hil lock* or *hill ock, univers ity* or *univer sity, semin ary* or *sem inary, catas trophe* or *cata strophe*

11 What is the force of each of the following prefixes, and from what language does it come? Give a word in illustration —*with-, contra-, dia, sub, per-, sym, arch-, un, ab-*

12 Point out the prefixes in the following words and give their force —*extract, misuse, retrograde, antecedent, antipathy, outdo, besmear, accede, ignoble, immense*

13 What is the force of the *-en* in each of the following words?—gold-*en*, sweet-*en*, vix-*en*, childr-*en*, maid *en*

14 Give the force of the suffixes in these words —black-*ish*, yeoman *ry*, spin-*ster*, malt *ster*, young-*ster*, doct *or*, dar-*ling*, man *hood*, god *head*, free-*dom*, lanc *et*, ring *let*, shad-*ow*

15 Give the Primary Derivatives from the following words —*heal, dig, weave, deep, lie, bath, love*

[By a Primary Derivative is here meant a word formed from another word as its root, by the addition of a sound not significant alone, or by the modification of an existing sound Thus from *strong* is formed *strength*, where we have both addition and modification, from *glass* is formed *glaze*, where we have modification only Now if, from the Primary Derivatives, fresh words are formed by similar processes, these words are called Secondary Derivatives So, from the Primary Derivative *strength* we form *strengthen*, from *glaze, glazier Strengthen* and *glazier* are Secondary Derivatives]

CHAPTER XXII

Analysis of Sentences and Parsing

219 Syntax deals with the combination of words in sentences, their government, agreement, and order.

In the course of our treatment of Etymology, many points belonging strictly to the province of Syntax have been already touched upon The remaining chapters will contain a brief recapitulation of these points, with the addition of such details as are required to complete the information, on the subject of Syntax, which may fairly be looked for in an elementary text-book

When, in dealing with Conjunctions, we explained the difference between a Compound and a Complex Sentence, our transition from Etymology to Syntax was complete. The student is recommended to read again the remarks on this difference which were made in Chapter XX, as they form a suitable introduction to the concluding section of this book. Syntax has to do with the relations of words to each other in sentences To enable us intelligently to discuss these relations, it is essential that we should clearly understand the nature of a sentence, the elements of which it is composed, and the varieties of form which it assumes

220 We described a Sentence as a collection of words by which we say something about a thing

This account of the nature of a sentence served our purpose at the time when we made use of it, but as a definition applicable to sentences generally it is clearly incomplete A Sentence may express—

(*a*) A Judgment, 'Birds fly,' 'The Bill will not pass,' 'Brutus killed Caesar' In such cases we do 'say something about a thing,' or 'make assertions,' and sentences of this kind we took as the type of sentences in general But in other sentences we give utterance to—

(*b*) A Command, 'Come,' 'Give it me.'

(*c*) A Question, 'Will he come?' 'Did you go?'

(*d*) A Wish, 'Would he were here!' 'May you grow wiser!' 'God save the Queen!'

These four varieties of sentences may be called (1) Declaratory, (2) Imperative, (3) Interrogative, (4) Optative

Shall we say then that a Sentence is a collection of words expressing a statement, command, question, or wish? This would be an enumeration of different kinds of sentences rather than a definition of a Sentence itself, just as it would be no definition of a triangle, if one were to say that a triangle is an equilateral, isosceles, or scalene figure Perhaps a better as well as a shorter definition is this

A Sentence is the complete expression of a thought in words

In defining the Subject and the Predicate of a Sentence, for the sake of simplicity and conciseness we shall take cognisance only of sentences in which statements are expressed

The Subject of the sentence is the word which stands for the thing about which the assertion is made

The Predicate is the word by which the assertion is made.

221 The following points require careful notice·

(1) The Subject of a Sentence is a word, but the assertion is made about the thing When we say 'The sun shines,' the word *sun* is the subject of the sentence, but we do not assert that the word shines

(2) Our definition of the Subject of a Sentence, as the word which stands for the thing about which the assertion is made, has been attacked on the ground that, when we say 'Brutus killed Caesar,' we make an assertion about Caesar as much as about Brutus yet 'Caesar' is not the Subject To this criticism we may reply that, in the sentence 'Brutus killed Caesar,' our assertion is made directly, or explicitly, about Brutus, but only indirectly, or by implication, about Caesar The assertion implied about Caesar is given in a direct form when we say 'Caesar was killed by Brutus.'

(3) Cannot a sentence be formed by a single word? Is not 'Go' a sentence?

Here the subject is understood, though not expressed 'Go' is equivalent to 'Go (you),' and in analysing a sentence in the Imperative mood, we must supply the subject which is omitted in modern English

(4) The Predicate is a verb or contains a verb The sentence 'Birds fly' contains a complete predicate 'fly' But in 'They are,' 'I shall be,' 'You became,' 'Walpole was created,' something is wanting to make sense, the verbs are incomplete predicates and require a **complement** to produce a meaning 'They are happy,' 'I shall be there,' 'You became secretary,' 'Walpole was created Earl of Orford.'

Again, some verbs need another verb in the Infinitive mood to carry on, or complete, their construction Thus, 'I wish,' 'You must,' are meaningless unless we supply, in thought or expression, some complement, 'I wish *to go*,'

'You must *remain*,' 'We are able *to pay*,' 'They ought *to leave*' These infinitives are called **Prolative**, because they 'carry on' (Latin *profero, prolatum*) the meaning of the preceding verb

222 **Different kinds of subjects** As the subject of a sentence is the name of the thing about which we make an assertion, the subject of a sentence must be a noun or the equivalent of a noun The following sentences illustrate different kinds of subjects

1 **Noun** —'*Birds* fly'

2 **Pronoun** —'*They* were defeated'

3 **Infinitive** —'*To read* good books improves the mind'

4. **Adjective** with noun understood —'*Rich* and *poor* live together'

5 **Noun-clause** —'*That he did it* is certain'

223 When we join an adjective to a noun, we increase the meaning of the name and consequently limit its application *White horse* suggests to our minds more attributes than *horse*, but is applicable as a name to only a smaller number of objects As the adjective thus joined on to the noun attributes to the thing represented by the noun the possession of some quality, we call the adjective an attributive adjunct to the noun, and the noun which stands as the subject of a sentence is said to be **enlarged** or **expanded** by the **attributive adjunct** So, in the sentence 'White horses are never driven in hearses,' the subject *horses* is *enlarged* or *expanded* by the attributive adjunct *white*, for though the number of things to which we could apply the name *horse* has been limited, or restricted, by the addition of the word *white*, the significance of *white horse* is greater than the significance of horse *horse* denotes more things, but *white horse* implies more qualities

The **enlargement or expansion of the Subject** is effected by **adjectives** and their equivalents —

1 **Adjective** —'*Good* wine needs no bush'

2 **Noun in Apposition** —'Brunel, *the engineer*, designed the bridge'

3 **Noun in the Possessive case** —'*Lucy's* love restrained him,' or its equivalent with *of*, 'The love *of Lucy* restrained him'

4 **Adjective-clause** —'The man *who stole the money* was arrested'

5 **Adjective-phrase** —'The man, *unsuspicious of any charge against him*, left the town'

6 **Participle** —'The candidate, *fuming* and *beaten*, addressed the crowd'

224 The student must notice the word **Phrase** which is introduced here for the first time. Our vocabulary provides us with three words, *Sentence*, *Clause*, and *Phrase*, of which we shall avail ourselves in this book in the following manner A **Sentence** we have already defined and have distinguished three varieties,—Simple, Compound, and Complex A **Clause** is a part of a sentence containing a finite verb thus a Compound sentence must contain at least two co-ordinate clauses 'We stayed, but he left' A Complex sentence must also contain at least two clauses, one principal, the other subordinate 'We stayed, after he left' A collection of words without a finite verb we shall call a **Phrase** In the sentence 'The boy got the prize,' we may enlarge the subject 'boy' by an adjective, 'the *industrious* boy', by an adjective-clause, 'the boy *who was industrious*', or by an adjective-phrase, 'the boy, *possessed of industrious habits*' Similarly we may enlarge the predicate by an adverb and say 'The boy got the prize *easily*', by an adverbial-clause, '*because nobody else went in for it*', or by an adverbial-phrase, '*in a very easy fashion*'

225 **The Object of a verb is the word which stands for the thing towards which the action indicated by the verb is directed**

There are the same possible substitutes for a noun as Object as there are for a noun as Subject in a sentence, and the Object can be enlarged in the same ways as those in which the Subject was shown to admit of enlargement. With a little reflexion the reader should be able to make his own sentences illustrating five different kinds of Object, and to enlarge the Object in six different ways.

Many verbs take two Objects, one the Direct, the other the Indirect or Dative-like Object. The verbs *teach, tell, give, lend, show, provide, refuse, get,* are examples. The noun which represents the Indirect Object might be construed with a preposition thus, 'Give (to) me the book,' 'Show (to) us the way,' 'Provide (for) him accommodation,' 'Get (for) me a cab.' See pp. 97, 138.

226 By attaching an adjective to a noun, we increase the meaning of the noun and limit its application. In like manner by attaching an adverb to a verb, we increase the meaning of the verb and limit its application. 'Sings sweetly' cannot be affirmed of as many individuals as simply 'sings,' but it signifies more. When we say of a prima donna 'She sings sweetly,' our statement goes further in the way of conveying information than the statement that 'she sings.' We may therefore describe the adverb *sweetly* as an **enlargement or extension of the Predicate** *sings*, because it adds to the meaning of the Predicate, though it narrows or restricts its application.

The Object of a Transitive Verb has really the force of an Adverbial Adjunct. If we say 'He loves' and then add 'music,' 'Mary,' 'his country,' 'virtue,' and so on, we limit in each case the application of the Predicate, but we increase, or enlarge, or extend, the information which it contains. The relation of the Object to the Transitive Verb is one of

such importance, however, that our analysis of sentences recognises it as distinct from the other adverbial adjuncts by which the Predicate is enlarged

The principal **Adverbial Adjuncts** by which the **Predicate is extended or expanded** are these —

1. **Adverb** —'She dances *beautifully*'
2. **Adverbial clause** —'He left *when I arrived*'
3. **Adverbial phrase** —'She dances *in a beautiful style*'
4. **Nominative Absolute**.—'*The door being open*, the steed was stolen'

This last is a particular kind of Adverbial Phrase

227 **Elliptical Sentences.** In our ordinary use of language we save ourselves the trouble of making two sentences when one will express our meaning, and effect this economy by the use of conjunctions Thus 'John and James preached in Jerusalem and Judaea' contains four sentences in one 'John preached in Jerusalem,' 'John preached in Judaea,' 'James preached in Jerusalem,' 'James preached in Judaea' 'He is either a knave or a fool' is equivalent to 'Either he is a knave, or he is a fool' 'He writes fast and well' means 'He writes fast, and he writes well'

Again, we frequently contract our sentences, not by leaving out precisely the part which has been expressed already, but by leaving out a part which is naturally suggested by what has gone before, though different from it So, we say 'I like you better than he,' which means 'I like you better than he *likes you*,' whereas 'I like you better than him' would mean 'I like you better than *I like* him' 'He is sharper than you' is an abbreviated form of 'He is sharper than you *are sharp*' 'I would rather incur death than dishonour' is an abbreviated form of 'I would rather incur death than *I would incur* dishonour'

In all such instances there is an **omission of a word or words necessary to the complete grammatical structure of the sentence** This omission is called **Ellipsis**, and in analysing sentences of this elliptical character it is necessary to make them complete by supplying the missing words

228 The student is now in possession of all the information which is requisite to enable him to attack a sentence and break it up into its component parts Analysis is a capital exercise for the wits, as it cannot be effected by the use of a set of rules mechanically applied Nor is it to be learnt by merely reading a book on the subject, any more than by reading a treatise on swimming or cricket one could become proficient in the side-stroke or the cut Books may furnish useful directions, but practice is the only way of acquiring these arts. And so, after giving a few suggestions to the reader as to how he should set to work, and supplying examples of analysis to guide him on points of form, we shall pass on to the treatment of other questions of Syntax

229 Hints for the Analysis of a Sentence.

1 Take a large sheet of paper and divide it into columns by ruling vertical lines At the head of these columns write 'Sentence, Kind of Sentence, Subject, Adjuncts of Subject, Predicate, Adjuncts of Predicate, Object, Adjuncts of Object' Instead of using the term Adjuncts, you can use the term Extension, Expansion, or Limitation, for, as we saw, the effect of an Adjunct is to produce an extension or enlargement of the information which we obtain from the word to which the Adjunct is attached, and a limitation or restriction in the number of things to which the word is applicable Again, instead of making one column for Predicate, you may, if you like, make two, in case you have to distinguish between an Incomplete Predicate and its Complement Similarly you may have separate columns for Direct and Indirect objects But this excessive subdivision makes the sheet present a very complicated appearance and has few compensating advantages *These distinctions* may be indicated equally well after the words which require them in the columns headed 'Predicate' and 'Object'

There are other forms in which the analysis may be worked out, but the tabular form is certainly the neatest, and it possesses this clear superiority over the rest, that the person who corrects the exercise can see at a glance whether the essential points have been correctly grasped

2 Read the passage over and consider carefully whether it is a Simple, a Compound, or a Complex Sentence, with which you are dealing Describe it accordingly at the top of the page Remember that wherever you find a finite verb you have got a separate clause. Supposing that the Sentence is Complex, make sure that you pick out the Principal Clause correctly a mistake here will turn the whole into nonsense Then determine what is the relation of the different Subordinate Clauses to the parts of the Principal Clause This general outline is the element of real value in the entire product An elaborate analysis, brimful of details, crowded with subdivisions, and elegantly executed, is absolutely worthless, if it starts wrong and represents subordinate clauses as principal clauses

3 Write down the Principal Clause at the head of your analysis Find its Subject, then find its Predicate; then, if the verb is transitive, set down the Object

4. Next look for the Adjuncts of each The Adjuncts of the Predicate will be adverbial The Adjuncts of the Subject or Object will generally be adjectival, but not necessarily so they may be nouns or noun clauses in apposition Thus in each of these sentences, 'The statement *that he has resigned* is not true,' 'I don't believe the statement *that he has resigned*,' the subordinate clause is a noun-clause in apposition with the subject and object respectively

Subordinate clauses must be dealt with in the same fashion as the Principal clause,—subject, predicate, and object, with the adjuncts of each, being placed in their proper columns

5 Complete the structure of sentences in which there is an ellipsis before you analyse them Supply the subject to sentences containing a verb in the Imperative mood 'Come' must be treated as if it were 'Thou come' or 'You come' Bear in mind that elliptical sentences expressing a comparison by means of *than* or *as* are complex the clause in which the ellipsis occurs is a subordinate clause Thus 'I am stronger than you' in full is I am stronger *than you are strong*', 'I am as strong as you' in full is 'I am as strong *as you are strong*' The clauses in italics are adverbial adjuncts

6 The interrogative pronouns may be treated like demonstratives and may form the subject or object of a sentence In '*Who* struck him?' *who* is the subject in '*Whom* did he strike?' *whom* is the object. The analysis is similar to that of the sentences '*He* struck him,' '*Him* did he strike,' *i e* 'He did strike *him*'

7 Observe that a clause introduced by relative pronouns or conjunctive adverbs is usually, though not necessarily, adjectival. In the

sentence 'The man *who stole the money* was arrested' the subordinate clause is adjectival, describing the man, but in 'I know *who stole the money*' it is a noun clause it takes the place of the noun or pronoun, 'the man' or 'him,' and refers to no other noun or pronoun as an antecedent Compare 'I know the place *where he is living*' (adjective clause), and 'I know *where he is living*' (noun clause)

8 Observe also that these relative words sometimes introduce what is really not a subordinate but a co ordinate clause 'I met John *who gave me your message*' is equivalent to 'I met John and he gave me your message' 'I saw him in London *where he was living*' is equivalent to 'I saw him in London he was living there' The clauses in italics make fresh statements and are not limitations of *John* and of *London* They must therefore be analysed as principal sentences

9 A relative pronoun is often omitted when it represents the Object it must be inserted in the analysis So, 'Here is the book ∧ I want' requires *which* as the object of *want* 'The man ∧ I saw yesterday' requires *whom* as the object of *saw*

10 Pure Conjunctions have no place in the analysis, because they serve merely to join sentences or clauses Interjections are excluded, because they do not enter into the construction of the sentence The same remark applies usually, but not invariably, to Vocatives, *i e* Nominatives of Address Thus in 'O Solitude! where are thy charms?' the subject is *charms*, and *O Solitude* must be left out from the analysis but in 'O Solitude, thou hast no charms' the subject is *thou*, and *Solitude* may be described as an enlargement of the subject

11 An Absolute phrase is an adverbial adjunct of the Predicate. Do not mistake its noun or pronoun for the Subject of the sentence In '*The door being open*, the steed was stolen,' the words in italics give the reason why the stealing was possible the subject of the sentence is *steed*, not *door*

12 Notice that, when the verb comes before the real subject, the word *It* or *There* often stands at the beginning of the sentence thus, 'It is hard to earn a living,' 'It is true that he did this' These assertions are equivalent to saying 'To earn a living is hard,' 'That he did this is true' The *it* comes first as an indication that the real subject is to follow In analysing such a sentence, however, 'It' may be called the subject, and the real subject may be regarded as an enlargement or adjunct *There* is only the adverb without its full force as marking place 'There are many pickpockets about' is grammatically the same as 'Many pickpockets are about there' *there* is an adverbial adjunct of the predicate

13 When a Complex Sentence contains as its Subject or Object a noun clause, this noun clause forms an essential part of the whole sentence and must be inserted as the Subject or Object of the principal verb Thus, in the Complex Sentence '*How he did it* is not certain,'

the words *How he did it* are the subject of the predicate 'is not certain' In the Complex Sentence 'I know *how he did it*,' the words *how he did it* are the object of the principal verb 'I know' To indicate the relation of the Principal and the Subordinate clause in sentences of this kind, write the entire sentence at the head of your analysis, underline the subordinate clause, and add the information 'Noun clause' at its close The sentence 'How he did it is not certain' should be written thus —'*How he did it* (Noun Cl) is not certain' To describe as a Principal clause the words 'is not certain,' without supplying their subject, would be absurd Similarly, the sentence 'I know how he did it' should be written in this form —'I know *how he did it*' (Noun Cl.)

230 Examples of analysis in tabular form

A In Brugès town is many a street
Whence busy life hath fled,
Where, without hurry, noiseless feet
The grass-grown pavement tread
There heard we, halting in the shade
Flung from a convent-tower,
A harp that tuneful prelude made
To a voice of thrilling power

B While the fourth edition of the *Traveller* was on the counters of the booksellers, the *Vicar of Wakefield* appeared, and rapidly obtained a popularity which has lasted down to our own time

---

C As thro' the land at eve we went
And pluck'd the ripened ears,
We fell out, my wife and I,
And kiss'd again with tears
And blessings on the falling out
That all the more endears
When we fall out with those we love
And kiss again with tears!

Observe that the two clauses, *When we fall out with those we love And kiss again with tears*, may be regarded as adjectival adjuncts of *falling out*, instead of being taken as adverbial adjuncts of *endears*

A Contains two Complex Sentences
Principal Clause of (I), In Brugès town is many a street
Principal Clause of (II), There heard we a harp

	Sentence or Clause	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Adjuncts of Subject
A	(I) In Brugès town is many a street pavement tread	Complex	street	1 many a 2 whence busy life hath fled 3 where pave ment tread
	Whence busy life hath fled	Adj Cl limiting *street*	life	busy
	Where without hurry tread	Adj Cl limiting *street*	feet	noiseless
	(II) There heard we thrilling power	Complex	we	halting in the shade flung from a con vent tower
	That tuneful prelude made to a voice of thrilling power	Adj Cl limiting *harp*	that	
B	1 While the fourth appeared	Complex	The *Vi car of Vale field*	
	While the fourth booksellers	Adv Cl limiting *ap peared*	edition	1 the fourth 2 of the *Trav el-ler*
	2 The *Vicar of Wakefield* rapidly ob tained our own time	Complex	The *Vi-car of Wake-field*	
	Which has lasted down to our own time	Adj Cl limiting *popular ity*	which	

B A Compound and Complex Sentence
Principal Clauses, 1 The *Vicar of Wakefield* appeared
2 The *Vicar of Wakefield* obtained popularity

Predicate	Adjuncts of Predicate	Object	Adjuncts of Object
is *Incompl* in Bruges town *Compl*			
hath fled	whence		
tread	without hurry	pavement	grass grown
heard	there	a harp	that tuneful prelude made to a voice of thrilling power
made		prelude	tuneful, to a voice of thrilling power
appeared	while the fourth booksellers		
was *Incompl* on the counters of the booksellers *Compl*			
obtained	rapidly	popularity	which has lasted time
has lasted	down to time		

C Contains two Sentences, (I) Compound and Complex
(II) Complex

Sentence or Clause	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Adjuncts of Subject
(I) 1 As through the land my wife and I	Complex	we	my wife and I
As through the land at eve we went	Adv Cl limiting *fell out*	we	
(As we) plucked the ripened ears	Adv Cl limiting *fell out*	we	
2 As through the land (we) kissed again with tears	Complex	we	
(II) Blessings (be) on with tears	Complex	Blessings	
That all the with tears	Adj Cl limiting *falling out*	that	
When we fall out with those we love	Adv Cl limiting *endears*	we	
(Whom) we love	Adj Cl limiting *those*	we	
(When) we kiss again with tears	Adv Cl limiting *endears*	we	

Principal Clauses of (I), 1 We fell out
2 We kissed again with tears
Principal Clause of (II), Blessings on the falling out

Predicate	Adjuncts of Predicate	Object	Adjuncts of Object
fell out	1 as through the land we went 2 as we plucked ears		
went	through the land, at eve		
plucked		ears	ripened
kissed	again with tears also adjuncts 1 & 2 as above		
be *Incompl* on *Compl*		falling out	that all with tears
endears	1 all the more 2 when we with tears		
fall out	with those we love		
love		whom	
kiss	1 again 2 with tears		

231. Directions for Parsing.

In analysing a sentence, we break it up in such a manner as to show how it contains the essential constituents of every sentence, Subject and Predicate, and round these elements we group the remaining words, phrases, or clauses, as adjuncts to one of these adjuncts of the predicate we assign a place apart from the other adverbial adjuncts and call it the Object.

In parsing, we deal with every word in a sentence separately, stating its Part of Speech, its inflexion, if it has any, and its syntactical relations with other words in the sentence Thus parsing is concerned with both the etymology and syntax of words, whilst analysis takes no cognisance of etymology

Unless the student is directed to give a history of the forms of the words, in addition to stating their parts of speech and particulars connected with their accidence and syntax, he may feel satisfied that he is carrying out his instructions to "parse fully" when he furnishes the following information —

1 **Noun** and **Pronoun** Give kind of noun or pronoun, its gender, number, case, and state why the word is in that case The gender of a pronoun cannot always be determined

2 **Adjective** Give kind of adjective and its degree, and state what word it limits As adjectives (except *this* and *that*) undergo no inflexions of number, gender, or case, it is better to speak of them as 'limiting' nouns than as 'agreeing' with nouns 'Agreement' suggests inflexion

3 **Verb** Give kind of verb, its voice, mood, tense, number, person, the subject with which it agrees, and its object, if it has one

Participle Give kind of verb of which it is participle, its voice and tense, and show which word it limits, also its object, if it has one The participle used in combination with auxiliaries to form a compound tense need not be parsed separately, though it may be parsed in this way So, *shall have been beaten*, *were beating*, *may have been beating*, are adequately parsed as compound tenses, but the student should understand the construction of the separate words

4. **Adverb** Give kind of adverb, degree, if adverb of quality admitting of this modification name the word which it limits, or 'qualifies' The latter is the term generally used of adverbs.

5 **Preposition.** Name the noun which it 'governs,' that is to say, the relation of which to other words it shows

6 **Conjunction.** Say whether it is co ordinate or subordinate.

Abbreviations may be used with advantage, but not in such a way as to cause ambiguity The particulars should be given in uniform order and as concisely as possible. The following examples of parsing illustrate these directions

I

Can I forget the dismal night *that* gave
My *soul's* best part for *ever* to the grave!
How silent did his old companions tread,
By *midnight* lamps, the *mansions* of the dead

Can verb defect intrs of incompl predication,—act indic pres sing 1st.—agreeing with *I*

I pers pron of 1st pers.—sing nom —subj of *can*

forget verb strong, trans —act infin. pres —prolative infin depending on *can* has for object *night*

that pronoun relat —referring to anteced *night*, subj of *gave*

soul's noun com —neut sing possess —dependent on *part*

ever adv of time, used here as substitute for noun 'for ever'='for all time'

how adv of degree—qualif *silent*

silent adj of quality, posit —used as adv of manner qualif *tread*, or as adj limiting *companions*

midnight noun sing —neut sing —used as adj limiting *lamps*

mansions noun com —neut plur ,—object of *tread*

II

For who, to dumb *forgetfulness a prey*,
This pleasing anxious *being e'er* resigned,
Left the warm *precincts* of the cheerful day,
Nor cast *one longing*, lingering *look behind*?

For conj subord (Some writers take it as co ord)
who pron interrog —masc or fem , sing —subj of *resigned*
forgetfulness noun abstr —neut sing objective,—gov by *to*
a demonst adj (or indef art)—limiting *prey*
prey noun com —neut sing nom —in appos with *who*
this pronom adj demonst.—sing —limiting *being*
being noun abstr —neut sing —object of *resigned*
e'er adv of time—qualif *resigned*
left verb, weak, trans —act indic past indef sing 3rd,—agreeing with *who*, has for object *precincts*
precincts noun com —neut plur —object of *left*
one adj quant card num —limiting *look*
longing pres part act of verb *long*,—used as adj limiting *look*
look noun com —neut sing —object of *cast*.
behind adv of place—qual *cast*

III

He had *laid* him *low*
It *were best let alone*
Choose whom you will, we will pay *him* respect

laid participle past, passive, of trans verb 'lay,' limiting *him* (If *had laid* were parsed in combination, it would be described as verb, weak, trans —act indic past perf sing 3rd,—agreeing with *he*)
low adj of qual used as adv —qualif *laid*
were verb defect of incompl predication,—act subj past indef sing 3rd,—agreeing with *it*
best adj of qual —superl —complement of predic. *were* and limiting *it*
let participle past passive, of trans verb *let*,—limiting *it*
alone adj of qual —limiting *it*
choose verb, strong, trans —act imperat plur 2nd,—agreeing with *you* understood has for obj *him* understood
whom pronoun relat —referring to suppressed anteced *him*, masc sing object of *will* (*choose*), the full constr being *choose you him whom you will choose*
him pronoun demonstr of 3rd pers —masc sing objective,—indir obj of *pay*

QUESTIONS

1 What is a sentence? What are the necessary parts of every sentence? Write down the shortest sentence you can compose, and show that these necessary parts are comprised therein Give examples showing how each part may be expanded

2 What is the subject in the following sentence?—'It makes no part of my present subject, to detail how the success of a few ballads had the effect of changing all the purpose and tenour of my life'

3 *What is the subject in each of the following sentences?*
'Who is this?'
'Give me your hand'
'There is said to have been a battle'
'His horse being killed, he was taken prisoner'

4 Define the subject of a sentence, and give one example of each of five different kinds of subjects

5 In what cases may the subject be omitted in English?
Explain the construction of *methought* in the sentence 'Methought the billows spoke and told me of it'
[The subject may be omitted (1) With verbs expressing a command 'Go' (you), or (2) a wish, '(I) Would it were so!' (3) The antecedent to the relative is sometimes omitted '(He) Who breaks, pays' (4) Impersonal verbs of course have no subject]

6 Point out the subject, predicate, and object, with their extensions, in the following —
'At once his trusty sword the warlike chieftain drew'

7 Make use of the words *horse*, *kick*, *man*, as subject, predicate, object, respectively, to form one sentence in which (*a*) the subject is enlarged by an *adjective clause*, (*b*) the predicate is enlarged by an *adverbial clause* relating to *cause*

8. Distinguish between a *phrase* and a *sentence*
'The Saxons invaded England' Write out this sentence (*a*) with the predicate extended by a *prepositional phrase*, (*b*) with the predicate extended by an *adverbial* clause relating to *time*
[A 'prepositional phrase' is a phrase composed of a preposition and a noun As the prepositional phrase here is to extend the predicate, it must have an adverbial force, describing how, why, when, or where, the Saxons invaded England *e g* 'in pirate boats,' 'with a fair wind,' 'from a desire for pillage,' 'after the departure of the Romans,' 'on the coast of Kent']

9. Write a sentence containing two extensions of the predicate, and let one of these contain an object with two enlargements of different kinds

10 Name the three kinds of subordinate clauses Explain why an *adjective clause* is so called State to which kind each of the subordinate clauses in the three following sentences belongs, and give your reason,—

'I asked where he lived'
'I have often seen the house where he was born'
'I shall sit where you wish'

11 Write three sentences, introducing in the first a clause equivalent to a noun, in the second a clause equivalent to an adjective, in the third a clause equivalent to an adverb

12 Construct a complex sentence with two subordinate clauses of different kinds, and state the relation of each to the principal clause

13 To what Parts of Speech do the following words belong?—*fifty, few, kill, cavalry, their, those, sheer, pell mell, as, why, bravo*

14 Parse these sentences —'In the front of the eye is a clear transparent window, exactly like the glass of a watch'
'When a man falls from his horse, he is often seriously hurt'
'He rushed into the field, and foremost fighting fell'
'Life has passed
'With me but roughly since I heard thee last'

15 Parse the italicised words in the following sentences —'Have you *any*?' 'No, I have *none*' '*When* did you come?' '*Why* is he here?' 'He went away *rejoicing*' 'This is *talking* at *random*' 'It is not true *that* he said *that*' 'I saw the *same as* he did'

CHAPTER XXIII.

Syntax of Nouns.

232 Syntax deals with the relations of words when they are arranged so as to form sentences Most of these relations come under the heads of **Concord** and **Government.** By Concord we mean the agreement of two or more connected words, as regards their gender, number, case, or person By Government we mean the influence exercised upon the case of a noun or pronoun by another word thus a transitive verb or a preposition is said to 'govern' a noun Owing to the scanty supply of inflexions in modern English, the relation of a word to other words in the sentence is often indicated by its position Hence we may say that syntax has to do with the **Order** or **Arrangement** of words, as well as with their **Concord** and **Government.**

The principles of Syntax might be enumerated under these three heads, but the student will obtain a clearer view of the subject, if we deal with the Syntax of the different parts of speech in succession, as we have already dealt with their Etymology In our treatment of the meaning and use of words, we discussed many points which belong strictly to Syntax What remains to be done in this section of the book is to give a short summary of these and to supply others which have been omitted

Syntax of Nouns. Our remarks on the Syntax of Nouns may be grouped most conveniently under the different cases

Nominative Case

233 **The Nominative case is used—**

(1) When a noun stands as the **Subject** of a sentence, whether the verb of which it is the subject be active or passive 'He works,' 'I have been wounded' The concord of the verb with its subject is discussed under the Syntax of Verbs

(2) As a **Vocative, or Nominative of Address** 'Milton! thou shouldst be living at this hour'

(3) To **complete the predicate** after certain intransitive verbs of incomplete predication such verbs as *to be, become, continue, seem, feel,* often require a complement 'He became prime minister,' 'I continued secretary,' 'He seemed and felt a hero'

(4) With certain **transitive verbs in the passive to complete the meaning** 'He was made secretary,' 'I was appointed treasurer,' 'You were called John' Such transitive verbs are called **factitive** or 'making' verbs, because the verb 'to make' (Lat *facio*) is a type of the class

(5) When a noun is in **apposition** with another noun in the nominative

(6) When the noun or pronoun, combined with a participle, is in the **absolute construction** Thus, '*The door being open,* the steed was stolen,' '*My partner having returned,* I shall go for my holiday'

(*Absolutus* means in Latin 'set free' or 'untied' an *absolute* phrase can be detached without affecting the construction of the sentence)

It is disputed whether the case of the noun in the absolute construction is really the nominative in modern

English In old English it was the dative As the dative ending has disappeared from our nouns, it is only when one of the personal pronouns is used that we can still see what the case actually is Should we say '*He* excepted' or '*Him* excepted'? '*I* returning' or '*Me* returning'? It scarcely admits of doubt that the nominative would be preferred to the objective as the absolute case at the present day

234. The following sentences illustrate a very common blunder in connexion with the use of the participle in a construction which is meant to be absolute but is not

'Walking across the common, my hat was knocked off by a cricket-ball'

As the sentence stands, *walking* is a participial adjunct of *hat*, and the construction is therefore 'My hat walking across the common was knocked off by a cricket-ball,' which is absurd The required correction may be made in various ways (1) By completing the absolute phrase Add the missing pronoun and say 'I walking across the common, my hat was knocked off' This makes the syntax regular, but the expression would be unusual (2) By substituting 'I had my hat knocked off' for 'my hat was knocked off' *I* is then the subject, and *walking across the common* is quite rightly the adjunct of *I*, instead of being the adjunct of *my hat* as before (3) By converting the participle into a past imperfect tense indicative Say 'As I was walking across the common, my hat was knocked off'

'Going into the garden, the grass wetted my feet' We may correct this by substituting (1) 'I going into the garden (absolute phrase), the grass wetted my feet,' or (2) 'Going into the garden, I wetted my feet in the grass,' or (3) 'On my going (gerund) into the garden, the grass wetted my feet' The first expression is one which nobody would ever employ, but it is grammatically correct A captious critic

may raise the further objection that, as my feet were wetted, probably after I had reached the garden and not on my way thither, *having gone* is more likely to suit the facts than *going*

235 **Apposition** This is a suitable point at which we may bring together remarks on Apposition that would otherwise be scattered in various parts of the book

When one noun is used to explain the meaning of another, it is put in the same case, usually in the **same number,** if possible in the **same gender,** and is said to be in **Apposition** The following sentences contain nouns in apposition

'Turner, the baker, lives here' *Turner* is the subject, *the baker* is in the nominative case in apposition

'I saw Turner, the baker' both nouns are in the objective case

'This is Turner's, the baker's, shop'. both nouns are in the possessive case

In practice we rarely employ the last form of expression Instead of saying 'This is Turner's, the baker's, shop,' we should say 'This is Turner the baker's shop' Here there is no apposition, but *Turner-the-baker* is treated as a compound noun **Identity of case is essential to apposition**

The noun in apposition usually agrees in number, but not necessarily a collective noun in the singular may be used in apposition with a noun in the plural, and *vice versâ* 'Four hundred *boys*, the whole *school*, turned out to receive him' 'This year's *team*, eleven well-tried *men*, will give a good account of themselves'

Owing to the absence of any appropriate feminine form, it is often impossible to mark a concord of gender between the noun in apposition and the noun to which it refers Thus we have to say 'Scott the novelist,' or 'writer,' and

'Miss Evans the novelist,' or 'writer,' as no feminine of *novelist* or *writer* exists But we should say 'Scott the poet,' or 'author,' and 'Miss Evans the poetess,' or 'authoress,' making the noun in apposition agree as regards gender when it is practicable to do so

236 **Order of the Noun in the Nominative Case.** The subject precedes the verb, as a general rule, but comes after it—

i in questions 'Did you say so?'
ii in commands 'See thou to that'
iii in certain uses of the subjunctive mood 'Were he here, you would not say this,' 'Would I could find him!' 'May you prosper!'
iv when *nor* precedes the verb 'I said I would not do it, nor will I,' 'He wanted only a pretext, nor was he long in finding one'
v in the phrases 'said I,' 'quoth he,' 'answered he,' etc
vi when the sentence is introduced by *there*, as 'There are some who deny this'
vii for emphasis 'Great is Diana,' 'Indeed will I, quoth Findlay'

Possessive Case

237. **Possession is only one of the relations indicated by nouns in the possessive case** 'John's hat' means 'the hat possessed by John', 'the master's cane' means 'the cane possessed by the master' But 'Byron's poems' does not mean 'the poems possessed by Byron', 'Peel's Act' does not mean 'the Act possessed by Peel', 'Cade's insurrection' does not mean 'the insurrection possessed by Cade', 'an hour's detention' does not mean 'the detention possessed by an hour' The term *possessive* is therefore inadequate as a description of the functions performed by this case

What feature is common to all these uses of the so-called possessive case? The common feature is this **the noun in the possessive has the limiting force of an adjective.** Just as 'John's hat' is a particular kind of hat, so 'Byron's poems' are a particular kind of poems,

'Cade's insurrection' is a particular kind of insurrection, and 'an hour's detention' a particular kind of detention

The Latin word for 'kind' is *genus*, and we might therefore call the case which marks the kind the *generic* case Perhaps this is what the Roman grammarians thought they were doing when they called it the *genitive* case But 'genitive' in its proper sense has a much narrower meaning and signifies 'belonging to birth or origin' It is appropriate to describe the case of *father's* when we speak of 'the father's son,' because the son derives his birth or origin from the father, but it is not appropriate to describe the case of *son's* when we speak of 'the son's father,' because the father did not derive his birth or origin from the son[1] Now the term 'generic' would describe the case equally well in both instances 'the father's son' is a particular kind of son, 'the son's father' is a particular kind of father We cannot however displace either the term 'possessive' or the term 'genitive,' though each is insufficient as a description of the relations often marked by words in the possessive or genitive case With these criticisms on the terms we will go on to consider the syntax of the so called possessive case

238 The Substitute for the Inflected Possessive Case

The preposition *of*, with the objective case of the noun which follows it, takes the place of the inflected possessive and is used in many instances in which the inflected form would be inadmissible Thus instead of saying 'the master's cane' we can say 'the cane of the master', for 'Byron's poems,' 'Cade's insurrection,' 'an hour's detention,' we can say 'the poems of Byron,' 'the insurrection of Cade,' 'a detention of an hour' It is only the inflected form however that is to be called a possessive *case* 'of Byron' must not be parsed as the possessive, but 'Byron' must be parsed as the objective governed by the preposition *of* For if 'of Byron' is entitled to the name 'possessive case,' 'to Byron' has an equally good claim to the name 'dative,' and 'from Byron' to the name 'ablative' But if 'to Byron' and 'from Byron' are cases, on what ground are we to

[1] See Max Muller's *Lectures on the Science of Language*, 1st series, p 105

refuse to describe as cases the combinations 'about Byron,' 'through Byron,' 'in Byron,' 'on Byron,' and so forth?

239 **Subjective and Objective Genitive.** The genitive case is described as subjective or objective according as the noun in the genitive stands for the subject or for the object of the action denoted by the word on which it depends Thus 'Carlyle's praises' may signify either (1) 'Carlyle praised somebody': here *Carlyle* is the subject of the proposition, and the genitive is subjective or (2) 'Somebody praised Carlyle' here *Carlyle* is the object of the proposition, and the genitive is objective. The expression is used in the former way when we say 'Carlyle's praises were rarely bestowed': it is used in the latter way when we say 'Carlyle's praises were loudly sung' 'Ravaillac's murder' is subjective, 'Henry IV's murder' is objective Not that we can combine the two inflected forms in the same sentence and say 'Ravaillac's Henry IV's murder' We should have to employ the preposition *of* to denote the objective relation and say 'Ravaillac's murder of Henry IV,' 'Ruskin's praises of Carlyle' Speaking generally, we may say that the inflected form is subjective in modern English The form made by combination with the preposition *of* admits of the same double use 'the persecution of the Puritans' is objective when we say 'The persecution of the Puritans drove them to Massachusetts' it is subjective when we say 'The Quakers of New England suffered from the persecution of the Puritans'

240 How are we to explain such expressions as 'a novel of Scott's,' 'a play of Shakespeare's'?

They are not pleonastic, that is to say, they do not contain any redundancy or excess of expression On the contrary they are elliptical, a noun being left out on which the noun in the possessive case depends The complete expression would be 'a novel of Scott's novels,' 'a play of Shakespeare's plays' Hence we cannot properly say 'a father of John's,' though we can say 'a brother of John's,' for 'a father of John's fathers'

would be absurd As a fact however we do employ this elliptical construction for purposes of disparagement, real or pretended, in cases where it is logically indefensible Thus we say 'that disreputable old father of John's,' 'this sweet wee wife of mine'

There are other ellipses, or omissions, of the noun which ought to follow the noun in the possessive case, and these we have to supply according to the sense required by the context 'He goes to St Paul's' may signify in different connexions 'St Paul's cathedral,' 'St Paul's school,' or 'St Paul's station' 'A picture of Agnew's' and 'a picture of Gainsborough's' alike require the word 'pictures' to supply the ellipsis, but in the former case the meaning is 'belonging to Agnew,' in the latter 'painted by Gainsborough'

241 How are we to explain such expressions as 'the city of Rome,' 'the month of June'?

When we bear in mind that the function of the noun in the genitive case is to limit the application of the noun on which it depends, the explanation of such phrases as 'the city of Rome,' 'the month of June,' seems fairly simple 'The city of Rome' is a particular city, 'the month of June' a particular month, just as 'the top of the mountain' is a particular top We do not say 'the river of Rhone' but we might have done so we use *river* and *Rhone* in apposition It is merely a matter of idiom, or form of expression peculiar to our language The Latin idiom was to say 'city Rome,' *Urbs Roma*, our idiom is to say 'city of Rome'

The construction of two nouns in apposition in the possessive case has been already discussed

242 **Order** The inflected possessive always stands before the noun on which it depends; 'Carlyle's praise,' 'the master's cane' The preposition *of* and its noun in the objective usually come after the governing noun 'the praise of Carlyle,' 'the cane of the master' But for emphasis this order may be inverted 'Of the spoil each man received a share,' 'Of virtue a great part consists in this'

Objective Case

243 The **objective case** in modern English marks relations which are expressed in Latin by the accusative and by the dative It is the case both of the direct and of the indirect object The following are its chief uses

The objective is the case—

(1) of the direct object of a transitive verb 'Brutus killed *him*'

(2) of the factitive object 'They made him *consul*,' 'He called her *Mary*,' 'We thought him a *lunatic*'

(3) of the noun of kindred meaning which sometimes follows intransitive verbs 'I dreamt a *dream*,' 'He slept a sound *sleep*' This is called the cognate objective See p 132

(4) of the noun in apposition to another in the objective 'They slew him, their *archbishop*'

(5) of the adverbial adjunct of the predicate, marking limitations as regards time, space, or manner 'We stayed a *year*,' 'The ditch is three *yards* wide,' 'This is worth *half a crown*'

(6) of nouns governed by prepositions 'He plays for *money*'

(7) of the indirect object the noun in this case stands for the thing to or on behalf of which the thing is done The verb 'to give' may be taken as the type of verbs which are followed by an indirect object 'Give *me* (indir obj) the book' (dir obj)

(8) of the pronoun in the two surviving impersonals, *methinks*, *meseems*

(9) after the adjectives *like*, *worth*, and *near* 'like *me*,' 'worth *us* two together,' 'near *him*'

(10) of the person for whose advantage a thing is done, or by whom it is regarded with interest these uses correspond with the *Dativus Commodi* and *Dativus Ethicus* of the Latin Grammar 'Do *me* this favour' is an example of the Dativus Commodi, or Dative of Advantage, *me* signifies *for me* 'Just as I was approaching, he whips *me* out his dagger' here *me* marks merely the fact that the speaker had an interest in the action it gives a lively touch to the narrative *Me* is called the Ethical Dative.

The Retained or Adverbial Object

The reader will remember that many transitive verbs which take two objects in the active voice, may retain either of these as its object in the passive Thus 'He taught me music' converted into the passive becomes either 'I was taught music by him,' or 'Music was taught me by him' In the first form, *music*, in the second, *me*, may be described as the Retained Object after the passive verb Or we may describe *music* and *me* as adjuncts of the predicate, or adverbial objectives Just as we call 'three miles,' 'three hours,' adverbial objectives when we say 'He walked three miles,' 'He walked three hours,'—*objectives* because they are in the objective case (though there is no inflexion of the nouns from which we can see this) and *adverbial* because they limit or qualify the statement that 'he walked,'—so we may call *music* an adverbial objective limiting the statement that he 'taught me,' or *me* an adverbial objective limiting the statement that he 'taught music'

244. Order The noun in the objective case usually follows the verb or the preposition by which it is governed But—

(1) When the word in the objective case is a relative or interrogative pronoun, it comes before the verb 'The book *which* you gave me,' '*Which book* did you give me?'

(2) When *that* is used as a relative and governed by a preposition, the preposition comes at the end of the sentence 'This is the book *that* you told me *of*' When *who* or *which* are used as relatives and governed by prepositions, they may stand before or after the prepositions 'This is the man of whom and that is the book of which you told me,' or 'This is the man whom you told me of, and that is the book which you told me of'

(3) For emphasis the noun in the objective case is sometimes placed before the verb 'Jesus I know, and Paul I know, but who are ye?' 'Silver and gold have I none'

---

245 Correction of Sentences In his school exercises the student is sometimes required to alter the construction of faulty sentences His aim should be to make them formally correct by the introduction of the smallest changes which are necessary for the removal of obscurity or error A free paraphrase of an ungrammatical passage suggests an evasion of the difficulty Thus 'I went into the garden and wetted my feet in the grass' expresses grammatically the meaning which the sentence 'Going into the garden, the grass wetted my feet' was intended to convey But this new version raises a doubt whether the nature of the mistake has been grasped by the pupil To take another illustration, the sentence 'Shakespeare is greater than any dramatist' is corrected, if we say 'Shakespeare is the greatest dramatist,' but this correction might be made by one who had failed to see anything amiss with the sentence in its original form

If, on the other hand, we insert the word *other* and write 'Shakespeare is greater than any other dramatist,' we introduce the minimum of alteration and put our finger on the faulty spot

246 Examples of the erroneous use of the participle are furnished in the following sentences Rewrite them correctly

'Being a fine day, I went out for a walk.'

[To correct this sentence we may either—

(1) Complete the absolute phrase and say 'It being,' or—

(2) Substitute an adverbial clause for *being* and say 'As it was']

'Sailing in a yacht, the coast seems to move faster than we'

'Courting the favour of neither rich nor poor, success attended his career'

'Foiled and disgraced, his candidature was abandoned'

'Louis was in some respects a good man, but being a bad ruler his subjects rebelled'

CHAPTER XXIV

Syntax of Adjectives and Pronouns

I Adjectives

247 Adjectives limit nouns **attributively** and **predicatively** When we say 'a clever boy,' the use of the adjective is attributive when we say 'The boy is clever,' it is predicative With certain transitive verbs of incomplete predication, such as *make, think, call, consider*, an adjective is used **factitively** to complete the statement 'They made, or thought, or called, or considered, him clever'

Some adjectives can be used only predicatively We can say 'The man is afraid, or awake, or well, or ill,' but not 'the afraid man,' 'the awake man,' 'the well or ill man' Sometimes an adjective changes its meaning when it is used attributively 'He is a sorry fool' does not signify the same thing as 'The fool is sorry' 'Glad' can be used attributively in only a few connexions 'glad tidings,' 'glad heart'

248 **Concord.** To speak of the agreement of the Adjective with its Noun in modern English is to use a term which seems scarcely appropriate, for the inflexions marking gender and case have disappeared entirely from English adjectives, and the demonstratives *this* and *that* are the only adjectives which admit of the inflexion of number

Collective nouns in the singular are often followed by verbs in the plural, but they cannot be preceded by *these* or *those* It is a common error to say 'these sort,' 'those kind'

'Those sort of things do not affect me at all' The best way of correcting this is to say 'Things of that sort do not' There is a harshness whether we say 'That sort of things do not,' or 'That sort of things does not,' though either expression admits of defence, if *sort* is a collective noun signifying 'class' But if *sort* is an abstract noun, equivalent in meaning to 'description,' each of these forms of expression is illogical, for it is the things, and not the description of the things, by which the effect is produced

249 The constructions of *many* are curious We may use *many* as an adjective and say 'many roses,' or 'many a rose,' with the idea of plurality in both instances We can also speak of 'a great many roses,' where the adjective *great* limits the adjective *many*, unless we suppose that *many* is here a noun and that the full expression would be 'a great many *of* roses' *Many* is used as a noun when we talk of 'the conflict between the *few* and the *many*' Notice the difference of meaning between 'few' and 'a few' *Few* means 'not many' *a few* means 'some' *Less* is often wrongly used where *fewer* would be the right word *Less* denotes quantity, *fewer* denotes number Hence we ought not to say 'No less than twenty persons were present'

250 *Each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*, are distributives, and their construction is therefore singular Hence the following are wrong

'Each of the boys read in their turn' We may alter *each of* to *all*, making *turn* plural, or we may alter *their* to *his*

'They followed each in their turn'

This sentence is not on precisely the same footing as the last, for if we substitute *his* for *their*, we may be making a mistake, as *they* may mean women, or both men and women Supposing that 'they' refers to both men and women, are we to say 'his or her turn respectively'? This phraseology is suggestive of a legal document rather than of

ordinary diction In such a case two courses are open to us,—to say simply 'in turn,' or to dispense with the *each* and say *all*

The use of adjectives as adverbs has been dealt with on p 175, and of adjectives as nouns on p 103

251 Errors in connexion with the use of the comparative and the superlative degree are illustrated in the following passages

1 Use of the superlative when fewer than three things are compared—

'Of London and Paris the former is the wealthiest'
'Which is the most learned of the two scholars?'

and of the comparative when more than two things are compared—

'The town consists of three distinct quarters, of which the western one is by far the larger'

To object to speaking of the division of a town into three *quarters* would be hypercritical when used of a town, 'quarter' means 'a part,' not necessarily 'a fourth part' In like manner we may speak of 'a weekly journal,' though originally a journal must have been a publication issued every *jour* or 'day'

2 Confusion of the comparative and superlative forms of expression—

'Of all other nations England is the greatest'

Unless we have already specified one nation as the greatest and are making a comparison between all the remaining nations, this sentence is faulty To say 'America is the greatest nation, and of all other nations England is the greatest' is correct But if this is not our meaning, we must say either (1) 'England is the greatest of all nations,' or (2) 'England is greater than all other nations' To blend the two expressions produces an illogical result, for England is not one *of* the other nations and therefore cannot be the greatest of the other nations. 'All other nations' signifies all the nations *except* England

Milton, imitating a Greek construction, speaks of—

'Adam the goodliest man of men since born
'His sons, the fairest of her daughters Eve'

But how could Adam be one '*of* men since born,' or Eve one *of* her own daughters?

An analogous mistake is illustrated in this sentence
'Tennyson was greater than all the poets of his age' 'All the poets' includes Tennyson He could not be greater than himself Say therefore 'all the other poets'

3 Pleonasm or excess of expression Double comparatives and superlatives were common in Shakespeare's time 'more better,' 'most unkindest,' 'most straitest' We avoid such obvious redundancies of form now-a-days, but sometimes employ expressions which really are pleonastic 'more perfect,' 'most universal'

'He advised me to choose the smallest of the two, and which certainly appears to be the most preferable' Note here (1) 'smallest and most preferable of two', (2) 'preferable' is already comparative in meaning, 'most preferable' is therefore pleonastic, (3) *and* is redundant Say, 'Of the two he advised me to choose the smaller, which certainly appears to be preferable'

Observe however that although 'most preferable,' or even 'more preferable,' is pleonastic in this context, since only two things are compared, a case might occur in which the use of 'more preferable' and 'most preferable' would be legitimate Suppose that four things, A, B, C, and D, are set before us, and a choice is allowed Then, if we like B better than A, C better than B, and D better than C, we may say that in our opinion B is preferable to A, but C is more preferable, and D the most preferable of all

252 Should we say, 'The two first' or 'The first two'?

Strictly speaking there can be only one first, but 'first' and 'last' are often used to signify 'in front' and 'towards the end' respectively so we say 'the first remarks I have to make,' 'the first days of the year,' 'the last lines of the play' Now if we talk of 'the first' or 'the last days of the year,' we may talk of 'the two first' or 'the two last days of the year' 'The first two' is free from this objection, but it is open to another It suggests a 'second two,' whereas there may be only three in the entire series

253 The uses of the so-called Definite and Indefinite Articles are given on p 106

Some care is necessary in the use of the Articles to avoid ambiguity in those cases in which ambiguity is possible 'A black and a white horse' means two horses, one black, the other white, 'a black and white

horse' means one piebald horse 'The secretary and the treasurer' means two officials, 'the secretary and treasurer' means one man who holds both offices But when no misunderstanding is possible, the article is frequently repeated for the purpose of emphasis 'A dark and a distant unknown,' 'This machine is the cheapest and the best'

The following are clearly wrong

'I saw the secretary and treasurer, and they examined my accounts'

'He could not distinguish between the red and green signal'

'A statesman and politician are two very different persons'

When there is no chance of ambiguity, because the adjectives cannot be taken as descriptive of a single thing, English idiom allows us either to repeat the article with the noun in the singular, or to use it only once with the noun in the plural So we may say 'The Old and the New Testament,' or 'The Old and New Testaments,' 'the singular and the plural number,' or 'the singular and plural numbers,' 'the primary and the secondary meaning,' or 'the primary and secondary meanings' But 'the black and white horses' might signify either the piebald horses, or those horses which are all black and those which are all white When the latter meaning is intended, there are two forms of expression free from all risk of misinterpretation, namely, 'the black and the white horses,' or 'the black horses and the white ones'

Correct —'It is sometimes said that the Nile is longer than all the rivers of the eastern and of the western hemispheres. During the past week it has overflown its right and left banks'

The following points require consideration (1) As the Nile is one of the rivers of the eastern hemisphere, can it be longer than '*all* the rivers of the eastern hemisphere?' (2) 'The eastern and the western hemispheres,'—'the eastern and the western hemisphere,'—'the eastern and western hemispheres' which of these forms may we use? why? Apply the same principle to 'right and left banks' (3) From what verb does *overflown* come?

254. Government The adjectives *like* and *near* govern an objective case 'I met a man like *him*,' 'The

boy near *me* made a disturbance' *Like* is used also as an adverb, 'like as a father pitieth his children,' meaning 'in like manner as' But it should never be used as a conjunction, followed by a nominative case and a finite verb Such solecisms[1] as 'like you said,' 'like I told you,' though in common use, are peculiarly grating and offensive

'These sort of men are sure not to speak true like we do'

Here we have (1) 'these sort,' already commented on (2) 'speak true' instead of 'truly' (or 'the truth') 'true' can be defended however on the ground that the adjective is used as an adverb, p 175 (3) 'like' used as a conjunction instead of 'as' *Like* would require *us* after it, but we cannot make *us* the subject of *do*, therefore *like* must be discarded, unless we say 'like as we do,' employing *like* as an adverb But such an expression is out of date

255 - **Order.** A single adjective used attributively generally stands before the noun, but in poetry sometimes comes after it, *e.g* 'tempests fierce,' 'shadows dark,' and in certain phrases it always occupies this position owing to Norman French influence *e g* 'knight errant,' 'heir apparent,' 'malice prepense,' 'sign manual' When several adjectives are attached to one noun they are sometimes placed after it for emphasis 'We reached the town, dull, dismal, and deserted'

II Pronouns.

256 **Concord.** In so far as Pronouns possess inflexions, they may be said to agree with the Nouns for which they stand in Gender, Number, and Person their Case is regulated by their relation to their own clause Thus we say 'Your sister borrowed my dictionary yesterday I met *her* this morning, and *she* gave *it* back to me' 'Let us divide the books you take *these* and I will keep *those*'

[1] By a solecism is signified a violation of syntax or of idiom The people of the Athenian colony of Soli in Asia Minor spoke Greek with many blunders Hence an error in grammar or pronunciation was called σολοικισμός, from which we borrowed the word *solecism*

The anticipatory *It* is used however of masculine and of feminine nouns, and of nouns both singular and plural 'It is the prince and princess' *You*, the pronoun of ordinary address, though applied to single individuals, is followed by a verb in the plural 'You are old, father William'

257 Great care is needed in the employment of pronouns the promiscuous use of them is frequently a source of obscurity[1] The historian Clarendon is a notorious transgressor against clearness in the use of the pronouns In the following extract from Goldsmith's *History of Greece*, the numbers 1, 2, 3, inserted after the pronouns of the Third Person, refer respectively to Philip, Aristotle, and Alexander

'*He* [1] wrote to that distinguished philosopher begging of *him* [2] to undertake *his* [3] education, and to bestow upon *him* [3] those useful lessons which *his* [1] numerous avocations would not allow *him* [1] to bestow'

In Indirect Narrative the dangers of ambiguity from this cause are naturally great Thus—

'A father who brought his boy to the police court complained that *he* got up and ran away before *he* was out of bed'

'He told his friend that, if *he* did not feel better in half an hour, *he* thought that *he* had better go home'

258 **Construction of the Relative Pronoun** How far is it correct to say that there is agreement of the relative with its antecedent in gender in English? *Who* is used only of persons, *which* (in modern English) of other animals and inanimate things *That* is used in reference to antecedents of all kinds The concord of the relative with the antecedent in number and person can be seen only in the inflexion of the verb which agrees with the relative Thus, in the following sentences—

[1] See Angus' *Handbook of the English Tongue*, p 289, and Salmon's *School Composition*, pp 181—3

'I, who *am* here, see this,'
'Thou, who *art* here, seest this,'
'He, who *is* here, sees this,'
'We, you, they, who *are* here, see this,'

the change in the person or number of the relative *who* is seen in the change in the verb which agrees with it *Am, art, is*, are not in agreement with *I, thou, he*, they are in agreement with *who I, thou, he*, are nominatives to *see, seest, sees*, respectively *who* is the nominative to *am, art, is*, and the person of *who* is determined according as it refers to *I, thou, he*

The following sentence is wrong Probably most students would correct it, but only a few would give the right reason

'Thou art he who hast commanded us' *Hast* should be *has* Why? Not, as five people out of six would say, "Because it must agree with its subject *he*," for *he* is not its subject, but because it must agree with its subject *who*, and *who* is here of the 3rd person, since it refers to an antecedent *he*, which is the pronoun of the 3rd person

Ought we to say 'It is I, your master, who command you,' or 'It is I, your master, who commands you'?

Either construction admits of defence. In the former case *who* refers to *I* as its antecedent, in the latter to *master*, the noun in apposition with *I*

The following examples are wrong because the relative does not agree with its antecedent in number the mistake is due to **attraction** of *one*

'It is one of the most valuable books that has appeared in any language'

Has should be *have*, because its subject *that* refers to a plural antecedent, *books*

'Johnson's *Lives of the Poets* are now published in six octavo volumes, forming one of the most elegant editions that was ever offered to the public'

Here (1) *are* should be *is* (2) *was* should be plural, as *that*, its nominative, refers to a plural antecedent, *editions*, (3) *was* should be *have been*, as the statement covers all editions up to the time of writing the notice

The case of the relative is determined by its construction in its own clause. Thus in the sentences 'This is the man *who* lost his money,' 'This is the man

whose money was lost,' 'This is the man *whom* they robbed,' the antecedent *man* is in the nominative case, but the case of the relative varies according to the requirements of the clause in which it occurs

Errors in the case of the relative are seen in the following sentences —

'He picked up the man who he had knocked down' *Who* should be *whom*, object of *knocked down*

'I offer a prize of six pairs of gloves to whomsoever will tell me what thought is passing through my mind' *Whomsoever* cannot stand as subject of *will tell* The error arises from the suppression of the antecedent, which would be in the objective case, governed by *to* The full expression is 'to *him whosoever* will tell' *Whosoever* is wrongly attracted to agree in case with the antecedent, which is omitted

259 **Government.** Errors of case sometimes occur in the use of the personal and relative pronouns Such expressions as the following are often to be heard 'Ask him to let you and *I* go,' 'Between you and *I* it stands in this way,' 'You are taller than *me*,' '*Whom* do men say that I am?' Two common forms of faulty construction of the interrogative pronoun are commented on in the following paragraphs

'Who did you ask to come?'

What are we to say about the grammar of this sentence? Clearly the *who* is indefensible on formal grounds, as we see by throwing the sentence into the shape of an assertion, 'You asked *him* (not *he*) to come' And in deliberate or dignified speech or writing, *whom* is the word which we should employ But in ordinary conversation *who* is often used in sentences of this sort by people who are quite aware that *whom* is grammatically the correct form Expressions of this type have indeed been defended on the assumption that there is an ellipsis of the words *is it that* after *Who* —'Who *is it that* you did ask to come?' in which expanded sentence the relative pronoun *that* is the object required But this ingenious assumption rests on no valid foundation, and the slovenly constructions in question must be avoided by those who wish to speak correct English

'Who do you believe he is?'

This sentence may be defended on the ground that *do you believe* is parenthetical, and not the principal clause, though the natural order

would in that case be 'Who is he, (do you believe?)' just as we might say 'Who is he, do you think?' But if *believe* is the principal verb, then the pronoun *he* must be thrown into the objective case, the verb *is* into the infinitive mood, and *who* must conform in case to the case of the pronoun before the verb *to be* Thus we may say (1) 'Whom do you believe him to be?' which corresponds with the Latin accusative and infinitive, or we may say (2) 'Who is he, do you believe?'

So, 'Whom did you suppose was going for it?' may be written (1) 'Who (did you suppose) was going?' or (2) 'Whom did you suppose to be going?' but as the sentence stands there is a confusion of these two constructions

QUESTIONS

1 Distinguish between the meaning of 'He had few followers,' and 'He had a few followers', 'I got little credit for it,' and 'I got a little credit for it'; 'She has a black and white pony,' and 'She has a black and a white pony'

2 Correct and give reasons for your corrections

'He pays no regard to those kind of things'

'He is good looking and good-mannered, but one of those impulsive men that says just what he thinks'

'The son walks exactly like the father did'

'I had more rather he be neither a soldier or lawyer'

'Neither of these persons consider themselves competent'

'The master told every boy to do their work and said he would punish whoever he saw idle'

3 Write short notes explaining the use of the words in italics

(1) I could a tale unfold *whose* lightest word

(2) As *who* should say

(3) Smite *me* him quickly

[These sentences contain no grammatical error

(1) *Whose* was originally of all genders and served as the possessive case of both *who* and its neuter *what* Its use as a neuter possessive is now confined to the diction of poetry this is rather a drawback, as *of which* is a more cumbrous expression

(2) *Who* is here an indefinite pronoun meaning 'any one,' 'some one,' not the relative *who* with antecedent *one* suppressed The neuter *what* survives as an indefinite pronoun in the expression 'I can tell you *what*,' that is, 'I can tell you something' 'As who should say' is archaic, but Dickens frequently employs it, *e g* in *Our Mutual Friend*

(3) The *me* is the Indirect object, and the construction corresponds with the Latin *Dativus Commodi* see p 225 *Me* signifies 'for me']

4 What is to be noticed in this passage from *Coriolanus*?

'Him I accuse
The city ports by this hath entered'

[Complete the construction by supplying the suppressed antecedent The sentence then reads '*He whom* I accuse hath entered' Now we may omit the antecedent and say 'Whom I accuse,' or omit the relative and say 'He I accuse,' but Shakespeare omits the relative and allows the antecedent to be attracted to the objective case of the relative]

5 State the laws which determine the use of the words 'who' and 'that' in a relative sentence Give a sentence showing how the sense is affected according as the one or the other of these two words is used

[Respecting the first part of the question, see p 124 If *who* and *which* were used purely as co ordinating relatives, and *that* as the restrictive or limiting relative, ambiguity would sometimes be avoided Thus 'His friends who lived in London missed him greatly,' in the mouth of the ordinary speaker, may signify either (1) His friends missed him greatly and his friends lived in London, or (2) Those particular friends living in London missed him though his friends in other towns may not have done so In this latter sense the use of the restrictive *that* instead of *who* is recommended, but the distinction is not carried out in modern practice Similarly, 'I will give you my books which are at my lodgings' may signify either 'all my books, and my books are at my lodgings,' or 'those particular books at my lodgings out of my entire stock' If *that* were reserved for the latter meaning, the expression would be free from risk of a wrong interpretation]

6 Explain the term *Attribute*, and give instances of five different ways of enlarging or qualifying the subject of a sentence

[An attribute is a quality *attributed* to a thing when we say 'The horse is white,' we explicitly assert the presence of the attribute or quality *whiteness* When we speak of 'the white horse,' we implicitly affirm the presence of the attribute See p 101 As the adjective marks the presence of the attribute or quality in a thing, the adjective attached to a noun is sometimes called the attribute of the noun, but this misuse of terms should be avoided

For the enlargement of the subject, see p 201]

7 State the rule for the agreement of the relative with its antecedent When may the relative be omitted? Give an example

Correct —'Let him and I settle who we will invite'

8 When the words *either*, *such*, *one*, *as*, are used as pronouns, to what classes do they severally belong?

Write down one example of the pronominal use of *as*

Parse the italicised words in —'Go, get *you* to your house,' 'He did it *himself*,' '*Such* a lovely day!'

9 Correct the following sentences Each sentence contains more than one error, some contain several

'Somebody called, I could not firstly tell whom, but, after, I found it was her'

'Three courses suggest themselves to me, but neither of these, or indeed any other seem acceptable to the President, whom people think is one of the most incompetent men that has ever occupied the Chair'

'My niece, whom it was supposed had been murdered, is a girl of ten years old.'

'Do you remember my cousin whom we thought had settled in Australia? There is some talk of him returning'

10 Is any correction required in the following sentence?—'I, he, and you can go'

[In this sentence there is nothing formally wrong, but usage enjoins a different arrangement of the pronouns From motives of politeness the first place is given to the person addressed from feelings of modesty the speaker mentions himself last Hence we should say 'You, he, and I can go' When a speaker joins others with himself and uses the plural number, considerations of courtesy and modesty are no longer applicable, and the pronouns occupy their natural positions, *we* standing first, *you* second, and *they* third 'We, you and they can go']

CHAPTER X...

Syntax of Verbs

260 Concord The Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person.

Thus we say 'He is,' 'They are,' 'Men work,' not 'He are,' 'They is,' 'Men works' Observe, however, that—

1 Collective nouns in the singular may be followed by a verb in the singular or plural, according as we are thinking of the aggregate, or of the individuals composing it We may say 'The Committee *were* divided in opinion,' or 'The Committee *was* unanimous'

2 Several nouns which are plural in form are usually construed as singular, since their meaning is singular or collective thus, 'The news *is* true' Other examples are given on p 87, (3)

The same explanation applies to our employment of a singular verb with a plural noun which forms the title of a book the book is singular though the title is plural We say therefore 'Johnson's *Lives of the Poets has* been edited afresh', 'Macaulay's *Biographies is* a reprint from the Encyclopædia Britannica'

Two or more nouns in the singular joined by *and* require a verb in the plural 'He and I *were* astonished' But if

the nouns are names of the same thing, the verb is singular so we say 'The secretary and treasurer *has* absconded,' when one man holds the two offices And on similar grounds, when the different nouns together express one idea, the verb is frequently in the singular 'Two and two *is* four'.

'Early to bed and early to rise
'*Makes* a man healthy, wealthy, and wise'

But if we employ 'with' or 'as well as' in the place of 'and,' the verb is not plural, unless indeed it would be plural without the addition of these words and the noun which follows them Thus, 'The minister, with his private secretaries, *was* present', as *with* is a preposition, it is impossible that *secretaries* should be a nominative to the verb, for *secretaries* is in the objective case governed by *with* Again, 'Veracity, as well as justice, *is* to be our rule,' not *are*, for the elliptical clause 'as well as justice' is introduced as a parenthesis

Nouns in the singular joined by *or* or *nor* require a verb in the singular the force of these conjunctions is to present the subjects as alternatives, not jointly

Hence the following are wrong
'Nor want nor cold his course delay'
'Death or banishment were the alternatives placed before him'

If *or* or *nor* connects two Pronouns of different persons, it is doubtful what the construction of the verb should be Perhaps the safest rule would be to make the verb agree with the pronoun which immediately precedes it, but even this arrangement produces very harsh effects Should we say—

'Either he or I *are* going,'
'Either he or I *am* going,'
'Either he or I *is* going'?

The usage of different people may vary A good many would say *are*, although as *or* is an alternative conjunction

and indicates that the subjects are to be taken separately, the verb must at any rate be singular If we say *am*, the verb agrees with the subject *I* but not with the subject *he* if we say *is*, it agrees with *he* but not with *I* In practice it is easy, and also desirable, to avoid this difficulty by modifying the sentence thus 'Either he is going or I am'

Grammatical blunders often arise by mistaking for the subject a dependent noun of a different number from that of the subject, owing to its position immediately before the verb The following are illustrations of this error

'To Marat, and Danton, and Robespierre, *are* due the honour of having made it universal' The subject of the verb is *honour*, and the verb should be singular

'His knowledge of French and English literature *were* far beyond the common.' The writer is misled by the words 'French and English literature' which come next the verb, and forgets that the noun 'knowledge' in the singular is subject of the verb

When words take irregular constructions owing to the influence of other words, they are said to be *attracted*

261 **Government** The *Direct Object* and the *Indirect Object* are dealt with on p 97, the *Cognate Object* on p 132, the *Retained Object* in the Passive construction with verbs which take a Direct and an Indirect Object on pp 138, 225 Note that, when both Objects follow the verb, the Indirect Object precedes the Direct Object. For if this order is reversed, a preposition is required before the Indirect Object, and the noun or pronoun is then the object of the preposition and no longer the Indirect Object of the verb So, 'Get me a cab' becomes 'Get a cab *for* me' 'I gave him a book' becomes 'I gave a book *to* him'

262. **Moods** The uses of the Subjunctive are set out on p 141 The constructions of the different parts of the Verb Infinite, Noun and Adjective, are given on pp 143—8 The student is advised to read these passages

again and then to consider carefully Questions 6 to 20 at the end of this Chapter

263 Future Tense.

In the Chapter on Auxiliary Verbs, it was pointed out that *Shall* and *Will*, used as auxiliaries, express (1) futurity, (2) determination A more detailed statement of the different uses of Shall and Will is given in a convenient form in the following table[1]

To express	1st pers	2nd & 3rd pers	Examples.
1 Futurity	shall	will	I *shall* come to morrow You *will* get back late He *will* arrive first
2 Question	shall	shall, will	*Shall* I pass? *Shall* you pass? *Will* he pass?
3 Determination	will	will	I *will* have my own way You *will* have your own way He *will* have his own way
4 Promise	will	shall	I *will* pay you to morrow You *shall* be paid to morrow He *shall* be paid to morrow
5 Compulsion	shall	shall	He says I *shall* do it Thou *shalt* not steal He *shall* surely die

[1] Adapted from Sir E. B Head's *Shall and Will*, p 119

The student should learn the first column of this table containing the list of different notions under which our uses of *shall* and *will* are classified Then, if he grasps the meaning of the terms employed, he can easily make his own examples and write down either *shall* or *will* as appropriate to the different persons, by the exercise of his intelligence This will be a much better course for him than burdening his mind with a table of details mechanically got by heart

264 In like manner we can make a table of the uses of Should and Would

To express	1st pers	2nd & 3rd pers	Examples
1 Contingent Futurity	should	would	I *should* be surprised, if it rains You *would* be surprised, if it rains He *would* be surprised, if it rains
2 Hypothesis	should	should	If I *should* see him, I will tell him If you *should* see him, tell him If he *should* see you, tell him
3 Determination	would	would	I *would* go, if I could You *would* go, if you could He *would* go, if he could

265 Sequence of Tenses in a Subordinate Clause

What is the rule for the sequence of tenses, when a principal sentence is followed by a subordinate one?

In general terms we may say that in English, as in Latin, Primary Tenses follow Primary, and Historic Tenses follow Historic More explicitly—

Principal Clause		*Subordinate Clause*
Present, Future	are followed by	Present or Future Indicative, or Present Subjunctive
Past	is followed by	Past

Primary followed by Primary

Examples —He says that he is working hard
He says that he will work hard
He works hard so that he may pass
He has worked hard so that he may pass
He will tell you that he is working hard
He will tell you that he will work hard
He will work hard so that he may pass

Past followed by Past

He said that he would come
He hoped that he might pass

He could do it if he liked
He had said that he would do it.

If however the dependent clause affirms a proposition which is true for all time, the present tense is generally used, though the principal clause contain a past tense so, 'Shakespeare affirmed that cowards *die* many times,' 'Carlyle asked if virtue *is* a gas' But the past also would be quite admissible

Is there any inaccuracy in saying 'I intended to have written'?

Verbs such as *hope*, *expect*, *desire*, *intend*, *command*, the import of which is future, require the present infinitive of the dependent verb, if it denotes an action simply subsequent in time to the time of the action of the principal verb Clearly I cannot hope or intend now to *have done* something already, for *hope* or *intend* implies futurity But if we wish to express the completeness at a future date of the action denoted by the dependent verb, the perfect infinitive is appropriate Though I cannot say 'I hope to have written,' when I mean merely that I hope to write, I can say 'I hope this morning to *have written* ten pages by to night,' where the *to have written* does not imply that the writing is prior to the hoping, which would be absurd, but implies that it will have been completed at a certain future time In the same way we may legitimately say 'I intended yesterday *to have written* to you before you called to day'

266 **Reported Speech** In reproducing the precise words used by a speaker we quote his speech *directly* But if we introduce his remarks with 'He said that,' or an equivalent expression, it is necessary to alter the pronouns and tenses, and the speech is then reported *indirectly*, or in 'oblique narrative' This distinction was denoted in Latin by the terms *Oratio Recta* and *Oratio Obliqua* As an illustration, take the following passage

"I wish you would play up," said the captain "why are you all so slack? Do keep the ball low They will get another goal directly, if you don't look out"

Here we have the speaker's own words given in direct narrative They may be indirectly reported in three ways

(1) by the speaker himself,

(2) by one of the team to whom the speech was addressed,

(3) by an outsider

Now notice the differences in the three indirect reports

1 (*I said*) I wished they would play up (*I asked*) why were they all so slack? (*I said*) I wished they would keep the ball low (*I said*) the other fellows would get another goal directly, if they didn't look out

2 (*He said*) He wished we would play up Why were we all so slack? He wished we would keep the ball low they would get another goal directly, if we didn't look out

3 (*He said*) He wished they would play up Why were they all so slack? He wished they would keep the ball low the other fellows would get another goal directly, if they didn't look out

After a present tense of the principal verb, (*He says*), the tenses of the reported speech will be different from those given above The student can make the necessary alterations for himself, observing, as he does so, the working of the law of the Sequence of Tenses When no directions are given to the contrary, a passage for conversion to indirect narrative is supposed to be introduced by the past tense, (*He said*), and the reporter is supposed not to form one of the persons addressed

Copious examples for practice in the conversion from the direct to the indirect form, and from the indirect to the direct form of narrative, are furnished by the daily newspapers in their parliamentary reports

As a further exercise let us write in the third person the following speech of King Richard, taking care to make the meaning plain, and commencing with *King Richard said that* —

'I wish I may forget my brother John's injuries as soon as he will forget my pardon of them'

This becomes—'He wished he might forget his brother John's injuries as soon as John would forget the King's pardon of them'

To avoid obscurity of expression some such substitution for *he* and *his* as we have introduced in the latter part of the passage is necessary To have recourse to parentheses containing the names is a clumsy expedient *e.g.* 'as soon as he (John) would forget his (Richard's) pardon of them'

QUESTIONS

1 What rules about Concord are still observed in English?

[Concord occurs in the following instances

(1) The verb and its subject in number and person
(2) The adjectives *this* and *that* in number
(3) The noun in apposition in case
(4) The pronouns in gender, number, and person]

2 Give rules respecting the concord of verbs with their subjects, when subjects differing in number, or person, or both, are connected by a conjunctive or alternative conjunction

3 Comment on the following constructions from Milton and Shakespeare

'Bitter complaint and sad occasion dear
'*Compels* me to disturb your season due'

'No ceremony that to great ones 'longs,
'Not the King's crown, nor the deputed sword,
'The marshal's truncheon, nor the judge's robe
'*Become* them with one half so good a grace
'As mercy does'

4 Correct the following sentences —

'This and that man was born there'

'Honour as well as profit are to be gained by this'

'Homer as well as Virgil were studied by him'

'But the temper as well as knowledge of a modern historian require a more sober and accurate language'

'The happiness or misery of men's lives depend very much on his early training'

'Neither Thomas nor John were there'

'I, whom nor avarice nor pleasure move'

'Neither you or me are invited'

'The diligent study of classics and mathematics prepare the mind for any pursuit in which it may engage'

'Nothing but misfortunes have been the result'

'Bacon's *Essays* are the most important of these two works'
'Three spoonsfull of water to one of wine is not near sufficient'

[Notice here, (1) the compound noun in the plural is *spoonfuls* in *spoons full* we have two words, *spoons*, a noun, and *full*, an adjective limiting the noun We may say either 'three spoonfuls' or 'three spoons full' Here the former is more suitable, as it is a quantity of liquid that is spoken of, not a number of spoons (2) The singular *is* may be defended, as the subject, though plural in form, represents a whole Similarly we say 'Twice two *is* four,' 'Twenty years *is* a long time,' 'Two thirds *has* been lost' (3) *Near*? Can this be justified?]

5 Explain the term *Indirect Object* Write two short sentences in illustration of its use after verbs, and one of its use after an adjective

Give instances, one of each kind, of words (1) governed by, (2) agreeing with, (3) qualifying, other words

[*Like*, *unlike*, *near*, will furnish the construction of the Indirect Object required after adjectives]

6 Explain with full examples the uses of the different *moods* of the verb

Notice especially the cases when *if* can be followed by the indicative, and when it must have a subjunctive

[For an answer to the former part of the question see p 139 The latter part is dealt with below, Q 8]

7 Give a definition of the Subjunctive Mood, distinguishing it from the Indicative

State the Mood of the word *may* in—

(*a*) You may go
(*b*) I give that you may give
(*c*) May good digestion wait on appetite

Give reasons for your answer in each case

[In (*a*) *may* has its own meaning as a notional verb 'You may go' signifies 'You are at liberty to go' In (*b*) it has parted with its own meaning and become a mere auxiliary of *give*, marking the subjunctive mood The same is true of its use in (*c*) where, as an auxiliary of *wait*, it serves to express a wish]

8 What is the general rule for the use of the indicative or the subjunctive mood in dependent sentences? Illustrate this rule by an example

[If the condition expressed by the verb in the dependent sentence is assumed as a fact, but without our wishing to imply that we think it likely or unlikely to be fulfilled, the indicative should be used but if the condition is stated as something conceived by the speaker either as unlikely or as actually impossible, the subjunctive should be used As we remarked before however (p 141), the indicative has very largely

taken the place of the subjunctive where the use of the latter would be more appropriate

This distinction may be illustrated thus

'If he *is* in the garden, I will find him,' (He may be or he may not for anything that I know, but assuming that he is, I will find him)

'If he *be* in the garden, I will find him,' (I am doubtful it is unlikely that he is)

'If he *were* in the garden, I would find him,' (I deny that he is.) Hence the subjunctive is the right mood in which to express a wish, 'I wish he *were* less idle,' which he is not, and a purpose, 'Mind that you *be* ready by one o'clock,' for as the event is future, it must be regarded only as conjectured, not realised]

9 Give examples of the different ways in which *is* can be altered into the subjunctive mood in English Give a classification of the various uses of the subjunctive mood

[Take the sentence 'He *is* idle' We may convert this from indicative to subjunctive in these ways (1) Though he *be* idle, he will pass his examination (2) Though he *may be* idle, he will pass (3) Though he *should be* idle, he would pass (4) Though he *were* idle, he would pass

The answer to the latter part of the question is given on p 141]

10 Write out the past tense of the subjunctive mood of the verb *to be*, and give an example of the use of the 3rd person singular of this tense after the conjunctions *if*, *that*, *though*, respectively

[For the conjugation see p 140

'If he were here, you would not say so'

'I wish that he were here'

'Though he were here, I should say just the same']

11 How is future time indicated in the subjunctive mood?

[As the subjunctive has no future tenses, the present tense is used

'We shall be sailing up the Channel to morrow' }
'We shall have passed Dover to morrow' } if the wind *keep* favourable
'We shall reach the Nore to morrow' }]

12 Correct —'If he don't know, I am sure I don't'

[Consider what *don't* is a contraction of *Don't* is 'do not,' so the sentence is 'If he do not know, I am sure I do not' On a suitable occasion 'If he do not' is correct English, the verb being in the subjunctive mood But this is not a suitable occasion on which to employ the subjunctive 'If' is not used in this sentence with its ordinary conditional sense On the contrary it signifies rather 'assuming as a fact' Hence the indicative should be used both in the antecedent and in the consequent clause, and we ought to say 'If he doesn't know, I am sure I don't,' our meaning being this,—'Seeing that he is certainly ignorant, I am certainly ignorant too']

13 What parts of the Verb may be used as (*a*) nouns, (*b*) adjectives? Apply your answer to the verb *speak*, by making short sentences in which this verb is used in the different ways you have mentioned

14 What is the subject in the following *To perform is better than to promise*? Write this with a verbal noun for subject.

Give not more than three examples of noun sentences as objects to *I remember*, and show how to express the same ideas with verbal nouns instead of verbs, using as far as possible the same words

Comment on any peculiarity of grammar in—'He cannot choose but hear'

[What part of speech is *but*? Think what word would be substituted for it What mood is *hear*? What might we expect to find with it?]

15 Parse the infinitives in the following sentences —

'To tell the truth I think you are to blame for going to sleep to kill time'

'To think that any one, who can help it, should be content to live with nothing to do!'

[Consider carefully the uses of the gerundial infinitive specified on p 144 and the examples in illustration of them]

16 Give the derivation and definition of the term *Participle*

Shew how your answer applies to the participles in the following sentence —

'In playing tennis he was always forgetting that a ball returned by his opponent, if it touched the top of the net dividing the courts, was likely to twist'

['Participle,' from the Latin *pars*, 'part,' *capio*, 'take', Participles are so called because they participate in the character of both adjective and verb Like adjectives they limit the application of nouns, like verbs (when formed from transitive verbs) they are followed by an object]

17 Carefully parse the words ending in *ing* in the following sentence—'*Fearing* that the load was *injuring* the horses I felt no more pleasure in *travelling* through that *entrancing* scenery'

[Notice that *entrancing*, though originally a participle describing an act, has here become an adjective describing a quality Like an adjective, therefore, it precedes the noun which it limits as a participle, its position would naturally be after the noun, as in the phrase 'the scenery *entrancing* our eyes' As an adjective it can be qualified by *very*, but our English idiom does not allow us to qualify participles by *very* We can say 'very entrancing scenery,' but not 'the scenery entrancing our eyes very' There are indeed a few past participles which usage permits us to qualify by the use of *very*,—participles of such common occurrence that they are treated as adjectives, 'very pleased,' 'very tired' But *much* is used with past participles regarded as past participles

we say 'much hurt,' 'much applauded,' 'much abused,' not 'very hurt,' 'very applauded,' 'very abused']

18 What is a Gerund? and how is it different from the Imperfect Participle? Give examples

Write down three sentences, in which the word 'walking' is used as a participle, an adjective, and a verbal noun, respectively

19 1 'Seeing is believing'

What different opinions have been held by grammarians as to the origin and nature of this idiom?

11 'I heard of him running away'

Is there any error in this sentence? If so, correct it, stating your reasons for the change you make

[1 These forms in *ing* have been called nouns, gerunds, and infinitives The Old English termination of the verbal noun was *-ung*, the infinitive ended in *-an*, and its dative case, which served as a gerund, ended in *-anne*

11 This sentence is not necessarily ungrammatical, but it conveys a meaning which is different from what was probably intended As it stands, *running* is a participial adjunct of *him*, and the meaning is 'I heard of *him*, when he was running away' But the speaker's intention was doubtless to state that he heard, not of *him*, but of the *running away* In that case the sentence ought to be 'I heard of *his* running away,' where *running* is not a participle but a gerund]

20 In how many different ways may the word *judging* be parsed? Illustrate each of them by a sentence

21 Correct the following sentences

'I heard of him saying as you were ill'

'I soon expect to hear of it being done'

[Notice the position of the adverb *soon* Which word should it qualify? Put it next to that word]

'The forgiving injuries is a Christian duty'

[Alter in two ways, making *forgiving* (1) a Verbal Noun, (2) a Gerund]

'His friends were very alarmed to find that he had weakened instead of strengthened his position'

[Can we say '*very* alarmed'? A finite part of the verb cannot follow a preposition *of* requires the gerund Or we can correct the sentence without altering *strengthened*, if we substitute for *instead of*, either *and not* or *rather than*]

'If I had only ran the last few yards instead of walked, I should have caught the train easy enough'

'If I had not broke your stick instead of hit you with it, you would never have ran home nor begun to tell those kind of lies which nobody but foolish men believe'

22 Give a short rule for the proper use of *shall* and *will* Why are the phrases 'I *will* be under the necessity,' 'We *will* be compelled,' incorrect?

23 Distinguish between the use of *would* and *should*, giving examples original or quoted

Correct —'If I was to run quick, I would fall'

'How will we know whether is the greatest of the two?'

'Directly we fight we will be beaten, unless you support us'

24 Errors of sequence of tenses occur in the following sentences correct them

'He said he won't give me any'

'I said that I will try again'

'She told you and me that she will come.'

'As soon as he has gone away, he wrote and told you and me to come directly'

'I intended to have bought a moderate-sized microscope, but was told that these minute organisms can be seen only under the best instruments'

'I was going to have written him a letter'

25 State what changes in mode of expression are made when a speech is reported in the indirect form

Deduce from the following report the words used by the original speaker —'He urged them to tell him of a single enterprise in which they had succeeded, and, if they could not, to give him some better reason than their own word for believing that they were blameless He would inquire into the facts and judge for himself'

26 Point out the ambiguities in the following sentence —'Ethel told Mary that it would not be her fault if she did not succeed'

[This report in oblique narrative may represent four different statements of Ethel's in the direct form Give them]

27 Correct the following sentences

'Snapping at whomsoever laid in its way, the police siezed the dog, on account of it not only being dangerous, but also unmuzled according to law'

[This sentence teems with errors of various kinds First, there are two words misspelt Secondly, there are grammatical blunders, *whomsoever*, *laid*, and *it* Thirdly, there are mistakes of arrangement, whereby nonsense is made Put the participial phrase 'snapping at whomsoever laid in its way' next to the word of which it is the adjunct at present it appears as if the police were snapping The order of the words *not only being* must be changed And was it 'according to law' that the dog had its mouth open, or that the police captured it?]

'They had awoke him, he learned, to be told that the river had overflown its banks'

[Notice the confusion of two constructions here 'They had awoke him to tell him,' and 'He had awoke (or been awaked) to be told'

A confusion of two constructions is called *Anacoluthon*, from a Greek word which means 'not following along,' 'not in sequence with' something else]

'He had two sisters, the one a wealthy spinster, the other a married sister is the wife of a farmer'

CHAPTER XXVI

Syntax of Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions

267 There are some words which are variously used as Prepositions, as Adverbs, and as Conjunctions The following sentences illustrate this threefold use of *but*, *before*, *since*

Prepositions	Adverbs	Conjunctions
I saw nobody *but* him	I have *but* one	I saw him *but* not you
Songs *before* sunrise	He went *before*	He went *before* I arrived
Since Easter	I have not seen him *since*	I will do so *since* you wish it

How are such words to be distinguished?

If the word in question governs a noun or pronoun, it is a Preposition Bear in mind the fact that the preposition frequently comes after the relative pronoun which it governs 'I gave the book *that* he asked *for* to the man *whom* I spoke *to*', 'This is the place *which* you told me *of*' And this relative pronoun is often dropped out altogether the words *that*, *whom*, and *which*, would probably be omitted from these sentences in conversation Nevertheless, *for*, *to*, and *of* are still prepositions, for they govern these pronouns understood

But to distinguish Adverbs from Conjunctions is often a difficult matter, for there are many adverbs which join sentences and therefore do the work of conjunctions For identifying an adverb there is a rule-of-thumb which directs us to move the word about and observe whether the grammatical structure of the passage in which it occurs is destroyed by the process if it is not destroyed, we are to conclude, according to this rule, that the word is an adverb Thus the sentence '*Meanwhile* the mob continued shouting' would retain its grammatical structure unimpaired, if the word *meanwhile* were placed after *mob*, or after *continued*, or after *shouting* But though this freedom of movement on the part of adverbs is a feature which deserves notice, it is quite useless as a practical test in precisely those instances in which the student might find a difficulty in deciding whether the word in question is to be called an adverb or a conjunction, for in those instances the word cannot be moved about, and yet it would frequently be rightly described as an adverb Take the sentences 'I know *where* he lives,' 'I saw him *when* he called,' 'I ascertained *how* he escaped' The words *where*, *when*, *how*, cannot be shifted to other places in the sentence without making nonsense of the whole Hence a student applying this test in his uncertainty would say they were not adverbs Yet they are adverbs *where* qualifies *lives*, *when* qualifies *called*, *how* qualifies *escaped*, just as much as the adverbs *there*, *then*, and *so* qualify these verbs when we say 'He lives *there*,' 'He called *then*,' 'He escaped *so*' It is true that *where*, *when*, and *how* also join the clauses 'I know he lives,' 'I saw him ..he called,' 'I ascertained he escaped' But though they join clauses, they do not therefore cease to be adverbs, any more than the relative pronouns cease to be pronouns because they also join clauses The co-ordinate clauses 'I know the man he did it,' are united in one complex sentence by *who*, when we say 'I know

the man *who* did it', still we do not call *who* a conjunction 'Conjunctive' or 'connective' pronouns we might indeed call them, and the name would be more appropriate than 'relative' pronouns, and 'conjunctive' or 'connective' adverbs is the proper name for words which, while acting as adverbs, also join clauses

Ask the question therefore,—Does the word about which I am in doubt not only join two clauses but also qualify some verb or adjective in the clause which it introduces? If it does, it is a conjunctive adverb if it does not, it is a conjunction Thus in the sentences 'I will go *if* you wish,' 'I know *that* he died,' the words *if* and *that* connect two clauses without modifying any word which follows them, but in the sentences 'I will go *when* you wish,' 'I know *where* he died,' *when* and *where* connect two clauses and also modify the verbs *wish* and *died* respectively

However, the student, who finds this distinction too subtle to serve him as a practical criterion, will commit no serious error if he describes a conjunctive-adverb as an adverbial-conjunction, and writers on grammar can be quoted in his support, whichever term he adopts[1]

268 The meaning affected by the position of the Adverb

Though the grammatical structure of the sentence may be unimpaired by the shifting of the adverb from one place to another, the meaning will often be affected by the change of position Consider the difference in the information conveyed when we say '*Only* John passed in Latin,' 'John *only* passed in Latin' and 'John passed *only* in Latin' Errors in the position of *only* are of constant occurrence At one of the large London Clubs, members are informed

[1] Cf Mason's *English Grammar*, § 263, and Bain's *Higher English Grammar*, p 101

that 'Smoking is only allowed in this room after 8 o'clock' This notice, strictly interpreted, implies that the authorities go so far as to allow, but would by no means encourage, smoking after 8 o'clock

269 **Construction with 'Than.'** *Than* is classed in some books as an Adverb, in others as a Conjunction In an earlier stage of the language it was an adverb and meant 'when' so, 'He is bigger than you' originally meant 'He is bigger when you are big' But it may now be treated as a conjunction simply As a conjunction it should be followed by the same case as the case of the word denoting the thing with which the comparison is made Thus, 'I like you better than he,' and 'I like you better than him' are both correct, but with different meanings Supplying the ellipses, we get in the former sentence 'I like you better than he likes you', in the latter 'I like you better than I like him'

'Than' and a Relative When *than* is followed by the relative *who*, we generally find the objective case *whom* Milton's 'Beelzebub, than *whom* none higher sat, perceived' is the classical example, and we should probably employ the same form of expression to-day 'Grace, than *whom* nobody can speak with more authority on cricket, says so', 'Gibbon, than *whom* a more laborious student cannot be found, maintains' Is it right? Before answering the question we may put another—Is it right to say 'It is *me*'? If whatever nearly everybody concurs in saying is grammatically right, we must admit that *whom* and *me* are right Defensible however from the standpoint of grammatical principles they are not If they were, we might say 'It is *her*,' 'Nobody can speak better than *him*' Yet we condemn these expressions as ungrammatical

270 **Construction of 'As'** *As* is a conjunctive adverb. it not only joins clauses but qualifies a word in the clause which it introduces 'He is not such a fool *as* he looks' means 'He is not to so great an extent a fool to what extent he looks a fool' *As* is used also as a demonstrative antecedent to this conjunctive *as* 'He is as good as (he is) clever' Another antecedent to *as* is *so* 'You are not

so silly *as* you seem' *So* is only a demonstrative adverb, not a conjunctive adverb like *as*

The nouns or pronouns connected by *as* must be in the same case 'Is she as tall as *me*?' is therefore wrong it should be 'Is she as tall as *I* (am tall)?' 'You could have done it as well as *him*' should be 'You could have done it as well as he (could have done it)'

271 **'As follows' or 'As follow'?** Ought we to say 'The words are *as follows*' or 'The words are *as follow*'?

If *as* is here a relative pronoun, the relative should agree with its antecedent in number Now the antecedent to *as* is *words*, therefore *as* requires a verb in the plural, *follow*, not *follows* Yet we always say *as follows*, regardless of the number of the antecedent Perhaps however *as* is here a conjunctive adverb, and there is an ellipsis of the subject *it* before *follows* 'The words are as *it follows*' At any rate, the phrase *as follows* has now become an adverbial expression In like manner we say 'Your remarks so far *as concerns* me,' where *concern* would be the right form if the ellipsis after the conjunctive adverb *as* is to be supplied by *they*, 'Your remarks so far as *they concern* me' In this instance again, we may maintain that the construction is really impersonal, and that *it*, not *they*, is the word omitted 'Your remarks so far as *it concerns* me' Similarly *as regards* is used in the singular whatever the number of the noun to which reference is made 'Your intentions *as regards* me'

272 **Construction of 'No'** *No* is both an adjective and an adverb As an adjective it is the equivalent of *none*, as an adverb, of *not* Now it is contrary to English idiom to qualify verbs with the adverb *no* We say 'I will *not* go,' 'Do *not* say so,' not 'I will *no* go,' 'Do *no* say so' Hence the expression 'whether or *no*' admits of defence only when there is an ellipsis of a noun 'Whether he is a knave or no I cannot say' may be explained as an abridgment of 'Whether he is a knave or *no knave*,' whereas 'Whether he is a knave or *not*' is an abridgment of 'Whether he is a knave or *is not* a knave.' When a verb is suppressed, 'whether or *not*' is the only admissible expression That it is wrong to say 'Whether or *no* he did it,' we may see by

resolving the sentence into its component parts 'Whether he did it, or he did it *not*'-

273 **Ellipsis** arising from the desire to be brief is a **frequent cause of error.** We say 'You are as good or better than he,' where *as* is required after *good* to make the sentence formally correct So again in the sentence 'You work harder but not so successfully as he,' *harder* requires *than* To supply these missing words and to say 'You are as good as or better than he,' 'You work harder than but not so successfully as he,' would be to employ modes of speech too elaborately precise for everyday purposes We can steer clear of an error of syntax on the one hand and of pedantry on the other by saying 'You are as good as he, or better,' 'You work harder than he does, but not so successfully'

Ellipsis is seen in the following sentence —'He did it without intending to'

Sentences of this type are usually condemned as ungrammatical, on the ground that the missing words, required after *to* for the completion of the sentence, are not *did it* but *do it* It seems pedantic however to object to such a form of expression If it is allowable to say 'He is taller than you,' where we supply 'are tall' to make the construction complete, it ought to be allowable to supply in thought 'do it' as suggested by 'did it.' Such expressions may be justified as constructions κατὰ σύνεσιν, that is, 'according to the understanding,' which supplies what is needed, by appropriately modifying what is already given

The following example is too slip shod to pass muster —'Tense shows whether something is, has, or will happen'

274. **Redundant use of 'And.'** *And* is often used pleonastically, that is to say, where it is superfluous, before *who* and *which* 'He is a man of a thousand *and in whom*

I place entire confidence,' 'These are some of the errors in his books *and which* it would be tedious to enumerate' The presence of the *and* seems to be due to a desire to avoid misunderstanding in the reference of the relative to its antecedent. If we said 'a thousand in whom,' *whom* might be taken as referring to 'thousand' instead of to 'man,' and if we said 'in his books which,' *which* might be taken as referring to 'books' instead of to 'errors' The *and* however is clearly redundant, and ambiguity should be avoided by casting the sentence differently When one relative clause has occurred already, a second relative clause is rightly introduced by *and* 'This is the book *which* you lent me *and which* I have read with interest' There is no reason in grammar or in logic why *and which* should not be used, even if no relative clause has occurred already, provided that the antecedent of *which* has already been limited by adjectival adjuncts 'He has painted a picture striking, suggestive, refined, *and which* no other artist has equalled' The clause introduced by *and* is equivalent to 'excellent' We should say 'striking, suggestive, refined, and excellent,' so there is no reason why we should not say 'striking, suggestive, refined, and which no other artist has equalled' At the same time one must admit that the construction has an unpleasant sound, though Thackeray, who is a master of style, often makes use of it

Repetition or Omission of the Conjunction The student should notice that, although we ordinarily insert *and* before only the last of several nouns or adjectives which occupy the same relation to the rest of the sentence, for rhetorical purposes the conjunction may be either repeated or dropped altogether The departure from the normal usage arrests attention and heightens the effect This may be observed in the following passages

'Love was not in their looks but guilt and shame and perturbation and despair and anger and obstinacy and hate and guile'

'Fall, dark curtain, upon his pageant, his pride, his grief, his awful tragedy'

The redundant use of conjunctions is called *Polysyndeton*, 'much-linked', the omission of conjunctions is called *Asyndeton*, 'not linked'

275 **Omission of 'That.'** The conjunction *that* is often omitted 'He said (that) he was going,' 'I thought (that) I had done it'

Notice the different parts of speech to which *that* belongs in the sentence 'I deny *that that that that* man said is true' The first *that* is a conjunction, the second, a demonstrative pronoun, the third, a relative pronoun, equivalent to *which*, the fourth, a demonstrative adjective

276 **Correlative Conjunctions** Conjunctions which occur in pairs are called Correlative Such are *though yet, either or, whether or, both and*

Similarly, the demonstrative adjectives *such* and *same* and the demonstrative adverb *so* have appropriate correlatives In the sentences, 'This exercise has *such* mistakes *as* I never saw before,' 'This exercise is the *same as* you showed up yesterday,' *as* is a relative pronoun in 'I am not *so* mean *as* to act thus,' *as* is a conjunctive adverb *Such* and *so* are followed by the conjunction *that* when the result or purpose of an action is indicated 'He made *such* mistakes *that* he failed to pass,' 'He took *such* pains *that* he might pass,' 'He worked *so* hard *that* he might pass' In strictness *so* always requires a correlative to express the comparison which it implies, but in common speech *so* is used with the meaning of *very*, and the comparison is not expressed 'She is *so* pretty, and he is *so* nice'

The following sentence illustrates two common forms of error in connexion with the use of *neither* 'You neither honour your father or your mother'

Two points require correction here (1) *neither nor* are correlatives, not *neither or* (2) *neither* and *nor* must be placed before the words denoting the things or acts which we wish to exclude Hence we must say (*a*) 'You honour neither your father nor your mother,' or (*b*) 'You do not honour either your father or your mother' *Neither* placed before *honour* suggests some other verb to which *nor* should apply 'You

neither honour *nor obey* your father or your mother' This misplacement of *neither* may often be found in the best writers, but this fact does not make it legitimate

277 **Idiomatic use of particular prepositions.** Particular prepositions are appropriate after certain verbs, nouns, and adjectives the use of a different preposition is a violation of idiom Thus we say 'conform *to*,' but 'conformity *with*', 'dependent *on*,' but 'independent *of*', 'part *from* a person,' 'part *with* a thing', 'disappointed *of* something' which we cannot get, 'disappointed *in* something' when we have got it. 'Differ' and 'different' are often used with the wrong preposition When we disagree with a person we differ *from* him Persons frequently say 'I beg to differ *with* you,' when they mean 'to differ *from* you' If A and B agree in differing from C, we may say that A differs *with* B, but in no other sense is the use of *with* correct Again, it is a common mistake to say 'different *to*', 'different *from*' is prescribed by our idiom We can speak however of 'a difference *with* a person' and of 'a difference *between* two things' The student can test his familiarity with English usage by combining with suitable prepositions the words given in Question 5 at the end of this chapter

Errors both of pleonasm and of ellipsis occur in the use of prepositions, especially in connexion with relative pronouns Pleonasm, or redundancy, is seen in these sentences

'It is to you to whom I am indebted for this favour'

'It is to this last new feature of the game laws to which we intend to confine our notice'

In the following, there is omission

'My duelling pistols in rosewood case (same which I shot Captain Marker), £20'

'Had I but served my God with half the zeal
'I served my king, he would not in mine age
'Have left me naked to mine enemies'

'Participles express action with the time it happens'
'And virgins smiled at what they blushed before'

QUESTIONS

1 Distinguish between an adverb and a conjunction Parse the word *as* in both places in 'You are not *as* rich *as* he is'

Classify adverbs according to their formation, giving examples

Classify conjunctions Write three short sentences in which the word *but* occurs as a conjunction, a preposition, and an adverb respectively

2 What three parts of speech may *that* be? Construct three sentences to illustrate your answer

3 What is a preposition? Distinguish between the uses of prepositions and conjunctions Give two examples of *phrase adverbs* and *phrase-prepositions*

[*Phrase adverbs* 'of a truth,' 'nowadays,' 'by no means,' 'at times,' 'in front,' 'for ever and ever,' 'in a canter,' 'head over ears'

Phrase prepositions 'by means of,' 'in accordance with,' 'in consequence of,' 'in reply to,' 'with a view to,' 'for the sake of']

4 Correct —'Should the frost continue as sharp as last week, which I do hope it may, the large pond will bear'

[How can we compare a frost with a week?]

'They know that as well as me'

'She had a very fair complexion, and which was quite different to her sister's'

'Many an emigrant have regretted the domestic pleasures from which they have been deprived, and which were impossible to be carried to their new country'

'I hope to see you next week, and believe me, yours sincerely'

5 What Prepositions are found in combination with the following words —*absolve, abhorrence, acquit, adapted, agreeable, averse, call, change, confer, confide, correspond, discourage, eager, exception, expert, glad, made, need, prejudice, provide, taste, thirst, worthy*?

Correct —'It bears some remote analogy with what I have described'

'You are in no danger of him'

6 Certain words are used in English sometimes as prepositions, sometimes as conjunctions Give examples and write sentences in which such words occur, specifying the part of speech in each example

Write four sentences containing the word *after* and make it (1) an adjective, (2) an adverb, (3) a preposition, (4) a conjunction

Form sentences to show the different uses of the words *for, since, but*, mentioning in each case the part of speech which the word is

7 The following sentences are faulty as regards the order of the words[1] The meaning is not free from ambiguity, and rearrangement is necessary

'I saw many dead soldiers riding across the battle field'

'I never remember to have seen such a storm'

'His success is neither the result of system nor strategy'

'Lost near the market-place a large Spanish blue gentleman's cloak'

'He seldom took up the Bible, which he frequently did, without shedding tears'

'The beaux of that day used the abominable art of painting their faces as well as the women'

'Erected to the memory of John Phillips accidentally shot as a mark of affection by his brother'

'Wanted a pianoforte for a gentleman with carved legs'

'Rats and gentlemen catched and waited on by Solomon Gundy'

'We regret to say that a mad dog yesterday bit the editor of the *Western News* and several other dogs'

'Wanted a boy to open oysters with a reference'

'The procession was very impressive and nearly a mile in length as was also the sermon of the minister'

'A man was run over in Cheapside this morning by a cab while drunk'

'Raw cows' milk is better for children than boiled'

'A transitive verb is when its action passes to an object'

[Change the position of the word 'transitive' a verb is a word, not a time]

8 Many sentences are faulty owing to incoherence of thought, although they may contain no violation of grammatical rules Point out any incoherence or confusion in the following sentences

'The horse is a noble animal, but if you treat him unkindly he will not do so'

'Prisoner at the bar, Providence has endowed you with great bodily strength, instead of which you go about the country stealing ducks'

'Salt is what makes the potatoes taste nasty when you don't put any on'

'If I am not mistaken, I met you yesterday'

'Towards the close of his life he committed suicide'

'I shan't do more than I can help'

'The guilelessness of his own heart led him to expect none in others

'This is the most wonderful preparation of modern times for the entire restoration of dimness or partial loss of sight'

'I shall have much pleasure in accepting your kind invitation'

[1] A large collection of examples is given in Hodgson's *Errors in the use of English* also in Salmon's *School Composition*

9 Distinguish the different meanings obtained by changing the position of the word *only* in the following —'John attempted only three problems'

Is any alteration necessary in the sentence—'I called, only I could not stop long'?

[*Only* is often used instead of *but*, as a conjunction to express opposition to what precedes 'I called, but in one respect my call was limited, namely, that I could not stop long']

Distinguish between—'Only he lost his child,' 'He only lost his child,' 'He lost only his child,' 'He lost his only child,' 'He lost his child only'

10 What meaning do you attach to the following sentences?—

'You punished me more severely than she'

'You punished me more severely than her'

Correct where necessary —'Wilt borst boldlier than me?'

[In Elizabethan literature examples often occur of the comparison of adverbs in *-ly* by adding *-er* and *-est* Tennyson and Carlyle have imitated the archaism with 'gentler' and 'proudlier' Thus *boldlier* is not ungrammatical, though *more boldly* would be in closer conformity with our usage *Me* should be *I*, the same case as *thou*, which is for rhetorical purposes suppressed after *wilt*]

'It is easier said than done'

'He did not get so many marks as me'

'John never wrote a better letter, nor as good, as James'

'You will soon find such peace which it is not in the power of the world to give'

'He neither knows French nor German'

'Neither John or Thomas considered that morning or evening are the best time for study'

'He was neither learned in the languages or philosophy'

Construct sentences containing the following phrases, rightly used — 'Better than he,' 'Better than him,' 'Than whom,' 'And which,' 'As good as I,' 'As good as me,' 'Would that'

11 Give one example of (*a*) Relative use of 'but', (*b*) Adverbial use of 'no', (*c*) Antecedent implied in Possessive, (*d*) Infinitive Absolute, (*e*) Object placed before Verb

[For (*a*) see p 125. 'There is no one *but* thinks you mad,' *i e* who does not think you mad, (*b*) 'He is *no* better'

(*c*) 'Poor is *our* sacrifice *whose* eyes
'Are lighted from above'

'*Our* sacrifice whose' is for 'the sacrifice *of us* whose'

(*d*) '*To tell the truth* I dislike him' (*e*) See p 226]

12 How may conjunctions best be distinguished from adverbs? Sometimes conjunctions are used in pairs or are correlative: give examples of the use of *although* and *not only* with their correlatives

13 Comment on—'I will try and go'

[This colloquial use of *and* instead of *to* is common with such verbs as *try, come, go*, but it cannot be justified logically in the case of the verb *try*. For though the expressions 'Come and see,' 'Go and ask' admit of defence on the ground that two distinct actions are commanded,—to come and to see, to go and to ask,—only one action is commanded when we say 'Try and go' we mean 'Try in order that you may go']

14 Show that in the following sentences there is Pleonasm, that is, redundancy or excess of expression

'Traveller, from whence comest thou?'

'Between you and me, I fancy there will be nobody else there but you and me'

'The river of Kishon swept them away, that ancient river, the river Kishon'

'After the most straitest sect of our religion I lived a Pharisee'

'He behaved with great magnanimity of mind'

'He stooped down to pick up a stone'

'The transparency of his motive is clear to every one'

'It is not nor it cannot come to good'

'I do not like the house in which I live in'

'Of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil thou shalt not eat of it'

'And, perhaps, it may be worth revealing the fact that my distrust of our present social arrangements was deeply increased by a second visit to the United States'

'I would be the veriest demagogue if I suggested that I had found a panacea for the immediate remedy of all those social evils'

[What does *panacea* mean?]

15 Give a few simple rules for Punctuation

[It is customary to use—

(1) a Full stop at the end of a sentence and after abbreviations — *e*, M P, B A

(2) a Colon or a Semicolon between sentences grammatically independent, but closely connected in sense and not very long. These stops are not used extensively by most writers at the present day. Rapid readers like to have their sentences chopped up short, so that the meaning may be taken in at a glance

(3) a Comma (*a*) to separate short co-ordinate sentences, 'I called, but you were out'

(*b*) to separate subordinate from principal clauses

(*c*) to separate the noun in apposition
(*d*) and the nominative of address
(*e*) and quotations
(*f*) and a series of words having the same construction 'Remote, unfriended, melancholy, slow' 'Men, women, children, cattle, —all perished'

(4) a Dash, to separate parentheses and introduce quotations Some writers have a fondness for the dash and employ it in places where the comma or semicolon would do equally well Sterne in the last century and Mr Besant in our own make free use of the dash
(5) Inverted Commas, to introduce and to end a quotation
(6) a Note of Interrogation after direct questions
(7) a Note of Exclamation after interjections and exclamations

These rules are 'few and simple' The student must bear in mind that in using stops at all our sole object is to make our meaning clear, that the insertion of unnecessary stops is a hindrance rather than a help to the reader, that punctuation admits of very few hard and fast laws, that the usage of different writers varies, and that the author is frequently at the mercy of the printer in the matter of stops Hence it seems a waste of time to burden the memory with elaborate principles of punctuation These will be found stated in Hewitt's *Manual of our Mother Tongue*, pp 559—564, in Mason's *English Grammar*, pp 206—209, in Angus' *Handbook*, pp 329—342, or in Bain's *Higher English Grammar*, pp 335—339 A useful summary is given in Gow's *Method of English*, pp 154—5]

16 Punctuate and insert capitals in the following passage

No one venerates the peerage more than I do but my lords I must say that the peerage solicited me not I the peerage nay more I can say and will say that as a peer of parliament as speaker of this right honourable house as keeper of the great seal as guardian of his majesty's conscience as lord high chancellor of england nay even in that character alone in which the noble duke would think it an affront to be considered as a man I am at this moment as respectable I beg leave to add I am at this moment as much respected as the proudest peer I now look down upon

Thus low

APPENDIX I.

DEFINITIONS OF SOME OF THE PRINCIPAL GRAMMATICAL TERMS

Grammar is the science which treats of words and their correct use

Orthoepy deals with the correct pronunciation of words

Orthography deals with the correct spelling or writing of words

Etymology deals with the classification of words, their derivation and inflexion

Syntax deals with the combination of words in sentences, their government, agreement, and order

Parts of Speech are the classes into which the words of a language fall, when they are arranged according to their separate functions in a sentence

Inflexion is a change in the form of a word to mark a change in its meaning

The **Accidence** of a language consists of the sum-total of the inflexions which the words in a language undergo

Analytic and **synthetic** are terms applied respectively to languages which have few or many inflexions

---

A **Noun** is the name of anything

A **Common Noun** is one which can be applied to an indefinite number of things in the same sense

A **Singular Noun** is one which can be applied to only one thing in the same sense

A **Proper Noun** is a singular name assigned to an individual as a mere distinguishing mark

A **Collective Noun** is one which denotes a number of things regarded as forming a whole

A **Concrete Noun** is the name of a thing regarded as possessing attributes

An **Abstract Noun** is the name of an attribute or quality of a thing

---

The sum-total of the inflexions marking number and case of a noun or pronoun is called its **Declension**

Gender is the form of a noun or pronoun corresponding in English to the sex of the thing named

Number is an inflexion which shows whether we are speaking of one thing or of more than one

Case is the form of a noun or pronoun which shows its relation to other words in the sentence

---

An **Adjective** is a word which is used with a noun to limit its application

A **Pronoun** is a word used instead of a noun

A **Relative Pronoun** is one which refers to some other noun or pronoun, called its antecedent, and has the force of a conjunction.

A **Verb** is a word with which we can make an assertion

A **Transitive Verb** is one which indicates an action directed towards some object

An **Intransitive Verb** is one which indicates a state, or an action which is not directed towards an object

A **Reflexive Verb** is one in which the subject and the object are the same

A **Verb of Incomplete Predication** is one which requires the addition of some other word to complete its meaning

The word which is added to complete the meaning of a verb of Incomplete Predication is called the **Complement** of the Predicate

An **Auxiliary Verb** is one which is used to supply the place of inflexions in the conjugation of another verb

A **Notional Verb** is one which has a meaning of its own

An **Impersonal Verb** is one in which the source of the action is not expressed

---

The sum-total of the inflexions of a verb is called its **Conjugation**

Voice is the form of a verb which shows whether the subject of the sentence stands for the doer or for the object of the action expressed by the verb

The **Active Voice** is that form of the verb which shows that the subject of the sentence stands for the doer of the action expressed by the verb

The **Passive Voice** is that form of the verb which shows that the subject of the sentence stands for the object of the action expressed by the verb

Mood is the form of a verb which shows the mode or manner in which the action is represented

The **Indicative Mood** contains the forms used (1) to make statements of fact, (2) to ask questions, and (3) to express suppositions in which the events are treated as if they were facts.

The **Imperative Mood** contains the form used to give commands

The **Subjunctive Mood** contains the forms used to represent actions or states conceived as possible or contingent, but not asserted as facts

The **Infinitive Mood** is the form which denotes actions or states without reference to person, number, or time

A **Gerund** is a verbal noun in *-ing* which, when formed from a transitive verb, can take after it an object

A **Participle** is a verbal adjective The active participle of a transitive verb differs from an ordinary adjective in taking an object

Tense is the form of a verb which shows the time at which the action is represented as occurring and the completeness or incompleteness of the action

A **Simple Tense** is one which is expressed by a single word

A **Compound Tense** is one which is expressed by the help of an auxiliary verb

Perfect and **Imperfect** are terms applied respectively to tenses denoting actions which are completed or in progress

A **Weak Verb** is one which forms its past tense by adding *-ed*, *d*, or *-t*, to the present

A **Strong Verb** is one which forms its past tense by change of vowel without the addition of any suffix.

Person is the form of a verb which shows whether the subject of the sentence stands for the speaker, for the person addressed, or for some other thing

---

An **Adverb** is a word which modifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb

A **Conjunctive Adverb** is one which joins sentences

A **Preposition** is a word which is used with a noun, or pronoun, to show its relation to some other word in the sentence

A **Conjunction** is a word, other than a relative pronoun or conjunctive adverb, which joins words and sentences

A **Co ordinating Conjunction** is one which joins co ordinate or independent clauses

A **Subordinating Conjunction** is one which joins a dependent clause to the principal clause

---

A **Sentence** is the complete expression of a thought in words.

A **Clause** is a part of a sentence containing a finite verb

A **Phrase** is a collection of words without a finite verb

A **Simple Sentence** contains only one subject and one finite verb

A **Compound Sentence** contains two or more independent clauses joined by co ordinating conjunctions

A **Complex Sentence** contains two or more clauses, of which at least one is dependent

It might also be defined as a sentence which contains a clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction

The **Subject** of a sentence is the word which stands for the thing about which the assertion is made

The **Predicate** is the word by means of which the assertion is made

The **Object** of a verb is the word which stands for the thing towards which the action indicated by the verb is directed

---

Concord is the agreement of two or more connected words as regards their gender, number, case, or person

Government is the influence exercised upon the case of a noun, or pronoun, by another word

Order is the arrangement of words in a sentence

When one noun is used to explain another, it is put in the same case and is said to be in **Apposition**

A noun, or pronoun and a participle, which are independent in construction of the rest of the sentence, are said to be in the **Absolute construction**

Ellipsis is the omission of a word or words necessary to complete the grammatical structure of the sentence

Pleonasm is redundancy or excess of expression

Solecism is an error in grammar or pronunciation

Anomaly is the name given to any irregularity of accidence

Anacoluthon is the confusion of two constructions

The deviation of a word from its right construction, owing to the improper influence of some adjacent word, is said to be due to **Attraction**

Asyndeton is the omission of conjunctions

Polysyndeton is the redundant use of conjunctions

Composition is the formation of a word by joining words together

Derivation is the formation of a new word (1) by adding to a word a part not significant by itself, or (2) by modifying an existing sound

A sound not significant by itself which is added to a word to form a derivative is called an **Affix** Attached at the beginning of a word it is called a **Prefix**, attached at the end, a **Suffix**

A **Hybrid** is a compound or derivative containing elements which come from different languages

A **Syllable** consists of a single vowel sound with or without accompanying consonants

---

Analysis is the resolution of a sentence into its essential parts

Parsing is the statement of the part of speech to which a word belongs, its inflexion if it has any, and its syntactical relations with other words in the sentence

---

An **Alphabet** is the complete collection of the letters used in writing a language

A **Phonetic System** of spelling is one in which words are written according to their sound

Orthographical expedients are devices by which the deficiencies of an alphabet are supplied

Accent is the stress of the voice laid upon a syllable in a word

Emphasis is the stress of the voice laid upon a word or words in a sentence

Metathesis is a transposition of letters in a word

Umlaut is the modification of a root vowel owing to the influence of a suffix

Changes in words arising from a desire to economise effort in speech are said to be due to **Euphony**

A **Vowel** is a sound by the aid of which any consonantal sound can be audibly produced

A **Consonant** is a sound which will not enable us to produce audibly sounds which are by themselves almost inaudible

A **Diphthong** is a combination of two vowel sounds in the same syllable

APPENDIX II

PASSAGES FOR ANALYSIS

1 Who is this?—Why are you so late?—Give me your hand —To bliss domestic he his heart resigned —There is said to have been a battle —He will succeed or die —Twilight's soft dews steal o'er the village green —Let me stay at home —His horse being killed, he was taken prisoner —Your voiceless lips, O flowers, are living preachers

2 Whatever the consequences may be, I shall go my way —Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown —No other allegorist has ever been able to make abstractions objects of terror, of pity, and of love —None but the brave deserves the fair —This is made of the same material as that

3 Who will undertake it, if it be not also a service of honour?—Won is the glory, and the grief is past —It is not true that he said that —Plain living and high thinking are no more —To the great virtues of that gentleman I shall always join with my country in paying a just tribute of applause

4. I am monarch of all I survey,
My right there is none to dispute

5 Sweet was the sound, when oft, at evening's close,
Up yonder hill the village murmur rose

6 Hope for a season bade the world farewell,
And Freedom shrieked as Kosciusko fell

7. The stag at eve had drunk his fill,
Where danced the moon on Monan's rill,
And deep his midnight lair had made
In lone Glenartney's hazel shade

8 He that has light within his own clear breast
May sit i' the centre and enjoy bright day

9 To me the meanest flower that blows can give
Thoughts that do often lie too deep for tears

10 Stone walls do not a prison make,
Nor iron bars a cage,
A free and quiet mind can take
These for a hermitage

11 High on a throne of royal state
Satan exalted sat, by merit raised
To that bad eminence

12 Last noon beheld them full of lusty light;
Last eve, in beauty's circle proudly gay,
The midnight brought the signal sound of strife,
The morn, the marshalling of arms

13 The World is too much with us late and soon,
Getting and spending, we lay waste our powers
Little we see in Nature that is ours,
We have given our hearts away, a sordid boon!

14 This vesper service closed, without delay,
From that exalted station to the plain
Descending, we pursued our homeward course,
In mute composure, o'er the shadowy lake,
Under a fated sky

15 Full many a gem of purest ray serene,
The dark unfathom'd caves of ocean bear,
Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,
And waste its sweetness on the desert air

16 The innocent are gay, the lark is gay,
That dries his feathers, saturate with dew,
Beneath the rosy cloud, while yet the beams
Of dayspring overshoot his humble nest

17 In this poor gown my dear lord found me first,
And loved me serving in my father's hall
And this poor gown I will not cast aside
Until himself arise a living man
And bid me cast it

18 The heights, by great men reached and kept,
Were not attained by sudden flight,
But they, while their companions slept,
Were toiling upward in the night

19 Then burst his mighty heart,
And, in his mantle muffling up his face,
Even at the base of Pompey's statue,
Which all the while ran blood, great Cæsar fell

20 How happy is he born and taught,
That serveth not another's will,
Whose armour is his honest thought,
And simple truth his utmost skill!

21 And statesmen at her council met
Who knew the seasons when to take
Occasion by the hand, and make
The bounds of freedom wider yet

22 When the men who were exploring the pit ascertained that the water had reached a certain level, they knew that the imprisoned colliers could not be rescued without great difficulty

23 Soon as the evening shades prevail,
The moon takes up the wondrous tale,
And nightly to the listening earth
Repeats the story of her birth
Whilst all the stars that round her burn,
And all the planets in their turn
Confirm the tidings as they roll,
And spread the truth from pole to pole.

24 He many an evening to his distant home
In solitude returning saw the hills
Grow larger in the darkness, all alone
Beheld the stars come out above his head,
And travelled through the wood with no one near

25 Intermit no watch
Against a wakeful foe, while I, abroad,
Through all the coasts of dark destruction seek
Deliverance for us all

26 The lively Grecian, in a land of hills,
Rivers and fertile plains, and sounding shores,
Under a cope of sky more variable,
Could find commodious place for every god,
Promptly received, as prodigally brought,
From the surrounding countries, at the choice
Of all adventurers

27 Thus with the year
Seasons return but not to me returns
Day, or the sweet approach of even or noon,
Or sight of vernal bloom or summer's rose,
Or flocks, or herds, or human face divine,
But clouds instead and ever during dark
Surrounds me, from the cheerful ways of men
Cut off

28 Breathes there the man with soul so dead,
Who never to himself hath said,
This is my own, my native land!
Whose heart hath ne'er within him burned,
As home his footsteps he hath turned
From wandering on a foreign strand?

29 Now is the winter of our discontent
Made glorious summer by this sun of York,
And all the clouds that lour'd upon our house
In the deep bosom of the ocean buried

30 That time of year thou mayst in me behold
When yellow leaves, or none, or few do hang
Upon those boughs which shake against the cold
Bare ruin'd choirs, where late the sweet birds sang

31 And where two raging fires meet together,
They do consume the thing that feeds their fury
Though little fire grows great with little wind,
Yet extreme gusts will blow out fire and all

32 There at the foot of yonder nodding beech
That wreathes its old fantastic roots so high,
His listless length at noon tide would he stretch,
And pore upon the brook that babbles by

33 As travellers oft look back at eve
When eastward darkly going,
To gaze upon that light they leave
Still faint behind them glowing,—
So, when the close of pleasure's day
To gloom hath near consigned us,
We turn to catch one fading ray
Of joy that's left behind us

34 But whilst, unconscious of the silent change
Thus stol'n around him, o'er the dying bard
Hung Wolfram, on the breeze there came a sound
Of mourning moving down the narrow glen,
And looking up, he suddenly was ware
Of four white maidens, moving in the van
Of four black monks who bore upon her bier
The flower strewn corpse of young Elizabeth

35 Once on a time, an emperor, a wise man,
No matter where, in China or Japan,
Decreed that whosoever should offend
Against the well-known duties of a friend,
Convicted once, should ever after wear
But half a coat, and show his bosom bare

36 The swallow stopt as he hunted the bee,
The snake slipt under a spray,
The wild hawk stood with the down on his beak,
And stared, with his foot on the prey,
And the nightingale thought, 'I have sung many songs,
'But never a one so gay,
'For he sings of what the world will be
'When the years have died away'

37 Daughter of Jove, relentless power,
Thou tamer of the human breast,
Whose iron scourge and torturing hour
The bad affright, afflict the best!
Bound in thy adamantine chain
The proud are taught to taste of pain,
And purple tyrants vainly groan
With pangs unfelt before, unpitied and alone

38 Orpheus with his lute made trees
And the mountain tops that freeze
Bow themselves, when he did sing,
To his music plants and flowers
Ever sprung, as sun and showers
There had made a lasting spring

39 We leave the well beloved place
Where first we gazed upon the sky,
The roofs, that heard our earliest cry,
Will shelter one of stranger race

We go, but ere we go from home,
As down the garden walks I move,
Two spirits of a diverse love
Contend for loving masterdom

40 If this great world of joy and pain
Revolve in one sure track,
If freedom set will rise again,
And virtue flown come back,
Woe to the purblind crew who fill
The heart with each day's care,
Nor gun, from past or future, skill
To bear and to forbear

41 In such a place as this, at such an hour,
If ancestry in aught can be believed,
Descending spirits have conversed with man,
And told the secrets of the world unknown

42 Those who reason in this manner do not observe that they are setting up a general rule, of all the least to be endured, namely, that secrecy, whenever secrecy is practicable, will justify any action

43 To thine own self be true,
And it must follow, as the night the day,
Thou canst not then be false to any man

44. Being angry with one who controverts an opinion which you value, is a necessary consequence of the uneasiness which you feel

45 This is the state of man, to-day he puts forth
The tender leaves of hope, to morrow blossoms,
And bears his blushing honours thick upon him
The third day comes a frost, a killing frost,
And when he thinks, good easy man, full surely
His greatness is a-ripening, nips his root,
And then he falls, as I do

46 Wide through the landscape of his dream
The lordly Niger flowed,
Beneath the palm trees on the plain
Once more a king he strode,
And heard the tinkling caravans
Descend the mountain road

47 What stronger breast-plate than a heart untainted?
Thrice is he armed, that hath his quarrel just,
And he but naked, though locked up in steel,
Whose conscience with injustice is corrupted

48 Deaf to King Robert's threats and cries and prayers,
They thrust him from the hall and down the stairs,
A group of tittering pages ran before,
And, as they opened wide the folding door,
His heart failed, for he heard, with strange alarms,
The boisterous laughter of the men at arms,
And all the vaulted chamber roar and ring,
With the mock plaudits of 'Long live the king'

49 But when the sun was sinking in the sea
He seized his harp, which he at times could string
And strike, albeit with untaught melody,
When deem'd he no strange ear was listening
And now his fingers o'er it he did fling,
And tuned his farewell in the dim twilight

50 They heard, and were abashed, and up they sprung,
Upon the wing, as when men wont to watch
On duty, sleeping found by whom they dread,
Rouse and bestir themselves ere well awake

51 So cheered he his fair spouse, and she was cheer'd,
But silently a gentle tear let fall
From either eye, and wip'd them with her hair;
Two other precious drops that ready stood,
Each in their crystal sluice, he ere they fell
Kiss'd, as the gracious signs of sweet remorse
And pious awe, that feared to have offended

52 Hadst thou but shook thy head, or made a pause,
When I spake darkly what I purposed,
Or turn'd an eye of doubt upon my face,
As bid me tell my tale in express words,
Deep shame had struck me dumb, made me break off,
And those thy fears might have wrought fears in me

53 Long time in even scale
The battle hung, till Satan, who that day
Prodigious power had shown, and met in arms
No equal, ranging through the dire attack
Of fighting seraphim confused, at length
Saw where the sword of Michael smote, and felled
Squadrons at once

54 Long time they thus together travelled,
Till, weary of their way, they came at last,
Where grew two goodly trees, that faire did spred
Their armes abroad, with grey mosse overcast,
And their greene leaves trembling with every blast,
Made a calme shadow far in compasse round

55 While some on earnest business bent
Their murmuring labours ply
'Gainst graver hours, that bring constraint
To sweeten liberty,
Some bold adventurers disdain
The limits of their little reign
And unknown regions dare descry
Still as they run they look behind,
They hear a voice in every wind
And snatch a fearful joy

56 Though a scholar must have faith in his master, yet a man well instructed must judge for himself, for learners owe to their masters only a temporary belief, and a suspension of their own judgment till they are fully instructed, and not an absolute resignation or perpetual captivity

57 Fame is the spur that the clear spirit doth raise,
That last infirmity of noble mind,
To scorn delights and live laborious days,
But the fair guerdon when we hope to find
And think to burst out into sudden blaze
Comes the blind Fury with th' abhorred shears
And slits the thin spun life

58 Since words are only names for things, it would be more convenient for all men to carry about them such things as are necessary to express the particular business they are to discourse on

59 Bless'd are those
Whose blood and judgment are so well commingled,
That they are not a pipe for fortune's finger
To sound what stop she please Give me that man
That is not passion's slave, and I will wear him
In my heart's core, ay, in my heart of heart,
As I do thee .

60 Dangerous it were for the feeble brain of man to wade far into the doings of the Most High, whom although to know be life, and joy to make mention of His name, yet our soundest knowledge is to know that we know Him not as indeed He is, neither can know Him

INDEX

A, sounds of, 44 feminine suffix, 80, and *an*, 105, form of *on*, 107, as prefix, 193
Abbess, 81
Absolute nominative, 218, error with participle in, 219
Abstract nouns, *see* Nouns
Accent, 50
Accidence definition of, 65
Address, nominative of, 94
Adjectives, definition of, 100 compared with verbs, 101 classified, 101, used as nouns, 103, inflexion of, 108 not admitting comparison, 109 comparison of, 110 suffixes forming, 192, followed by objective, 225, 232 used attributively and predicatively, 101, 228, factitive use of, 228, agreement of, 228, order of, 233
Adjective clauses, 184
Adjunct, attributive, 200 adverbial, 203
Adverbs, definition of, 172, classification of, 172, formation of, 173 used as adjectives, 175 as nouns, 181, showing case-endings, 174, simple and conjunctive, 172, *yes* and *no*, 173, from *he, who, the*, 174, compound, 174 modify certain parts of speech, 171 syntax of, 255 distinguished from prepositions, 180, distinguished from conjunctions 255, meaning affected by position, 256
Adverbial adjuncts, 203, clauses, 185, object, 225
After, different parts of speech, 63
Agency, suffixes marking, 192
Alms, 87
Alphabet, the English, 54 deficient, redundant, inconsistent, 54 origin of, 58 requirements of a perfect, 54, phonetic, 55
Alternative conjunctions, syntax of, 241
An, a, origin of, 105, uses of, 106, syntax of, 231
Anacoluthon, 253
Analysis, directions for, 204
Analytic languages, 65
And, redundant use of, 259
Angles, original home of, 4
Anglo Saxon, meaning of, 5
Anomaly, in number of nouns, 87
Antecedent to relative, 121 suppressed, 122
Any, 125
Apostrophe in possessive, 95
Apposition, 220, possessive of nouns in, 95
Archaic plural forms, 86
Are, 165
Arrangement, *see* Order
Articles, 104, not a separate part of speech, 105, chief uses of, 106, syntax of, 231
Articulate sounds 61
Aryan race, original home of, 23 family of languages, 23, its divisions, 25 European languages not belonging to, 26
As, relative pronoun, 125, adverb, syntax of, 257, 261
'As follow or 'As follows,' 258
Aspirates, 52
Asyndeton, 261
Attraction, 235, 238, 242
Attribute, meaning of, 101, misuse of term, 238
Attributive adjunct, *see* Adjunct use of adjectives, 101, 228
Aught, 125
Augmentatives, 192
Auxiliary verbs, 133, 164
Aye, sound of diphthong in, 46

Basque, 27
Be, conjugation of, 140, test for subjunctive, 142, verb of incomplete predication 132 uses of, 165
Beef, 86
Better, best, 111
Breaths, 41
Brethren, 86
Bridegroom, 82
Britain, Roman conquest of, 2, English conquest of, 3
Britons, a Keltic race, 2, language of, 2, what became of the, 4
But, as relative, 125, meanings of, 63

C, redundant letter, 47
Cambria, 2
Can, 167
Capital letters, when used, 59

Case, definition of, 92, derivation of, 99 in English and Latin compared, 92, in nouns and pronouns compared, 93, how to determine, 97 possessive, 94, substitute for, 95 formation of, 95, syntax of, 221
Causative suffixes, 193
Checks, 41
Cherubim, 87
Chicken, 49, 86
Children, 86
Cingalese, 26
Clause, definition of, 201
Cognate objective, 132
Collective nouns, 74 syntax of, 209, 240
Common, proper and singular nouns, 70, gender, nouns of, 78
Comparatives not followed by *than*, 113
Comparison of adjectives 108 modes of marking 110 irregular, 111, errors of syntax in, 230, pleonasm in, 112, 231, of adverbs, 174
Complement of predicate, 133
Complex sentence, 184
Composition marking gender, 81
Compounds and derivatives, 189
Compound nouns, plurals of, 89 possessive of, 95, relation of parts in, 190 gerund forms, 148
Con, 167
Concord, definition of, 217, of pronouns and nouns, 233 of relative with antecedent, 234 of verbs and subjects, 240, rules observed in, 247
Concrete nouns, 75
Conjugation, definition of, 158, of *be*, 140 of simple tenses, 159 of verb with auxiliaries, 160
Conjunctions, definition of, 182 join sentences and words, 182 classification of, 183, co ordinate, 186 sub ordinate, 187, derived from other parts of speech, 187, correlative, 187, alternative, syntax of, 241, 254
Conjunctive pronouns, 121 adverbs, 172
Conquest of Britain, Roman, 2 English, 2, Norman, 5
Consonants, definition of, 38 classification of, 39
Co ordinate conjunctions, 183, 240
Co ordinating use of relative pronoun, 125, 206
Copula, 170
Could, 167
Cumbria, 2
Cunning, 167
Cymry, 2

Danish element in English, 18
Dare 168
Dative in old English, 94 of infinitive, 143
Dativus Commodi, 225, Ethicus, 225
Declension, definition of, 66
Defective verbs, 164
Deficiency of alphabet, 55
Definite article, *see* Article
Demonstrative pronouns, 119
Dentals, 41
Derivation and composition, 189 gender marked by, 80
Deutsch, the same root as Teutonic, 3
Did, 154
Diminutives, 191
Diphthongs, 45
Direct narrative, 245
Distributive pronouns, 126 syntax of, 229
Do, formation of past tense, 154, uses of, 169 compounds formed with 169
Double feminines, 80, comparatives, 112 superlatives, 112
Dozen, 104
Drake, 82
Dual number, 84
Duchess 81
Dutch words in English, 7, 19

E, sounds of, 44
Each, etymology of, 126 every, either, syntax of, 229
Eaves, 87
ed, as adjectival suffix, 192
Either, etymology of, 126 syntax of, 229
Elder and older, 111
Eleven 103
Ellipsis, definition of, 204 a cause of error, 259
Emphasis, definition of, 50
en, plural suffix, 86, feminine suffix, 80, verb suffix, 193 adjective suffix, 192 past participle suffix, 153
English Conquest of Britain, 2
English, who they were, 3, whence they came, 4, old language pure, 26, modern language mixed, 26, its constituents, 9
Enlargement of subject, 210 of predicate, 203
-er, comparative suffix, 110 masculine suffix, 192, plural suffix, 86 verbal suffix, 193
Erse, 2, 25
-es, plural suffix, 85
-ess, feminine suffix, 81
Etymology, definition of, 33
Euphonic changes, 49
Events affecting the formation of English vocabulary, 7
Expedients orthographical, 56
Explosives, 41
Extension, meaning of, 200, 204
Every, etymology of, 126 syntax of, 229

F, plural of nouns ending in, 85
Factitive verbs 218, object, 225 use of adjectives, 228

Family of languages, Aryan, 23, Semitic, 27
Farther, 112
Feminine, *see* Gender double forms, 80
'Few' and 'a few,' 229
Fewer and less, 229
Finite and Infinite applied to forms of the verb, 142
Finnish, 27
First, 112
'First two' and 'two first, 231
Five, 103
Fly, plural of, 86
fold, 104
for and fore, prefixes, 193
Foreign plural forms, 87
Former, 112
French influence on English language, 7
Frequentative suffix, 193
Friday, absence of possessive *s*, 98
Further, 112
Future, how expressed in subjunctive, 249 table of forms, 243 predictive and promissive, 166

Gaffer and gammer, 82
Gander, 82
ge in *yclept*, 158
Gender, comparison of English and other languages as regards, 78 distinguished from sex, 78 definition of, 79 modes of marking, 80 in pronouns, 117 of nouns in apposition, 220
Genitive, *see* Possessive, meaning of word, 222, relations expressed by old, 98, subjective and objective, 223
Gerund, definition of, 146 compound forms of, 148
Gerundial infinitive 143
Go 158 not an auxiliary, 150
Government, definition of, 217
Grammar, definition of, 35 divisions of, 35 an Art or a Science, 31
Greek words in English, 17
Gutturals, 42

Have, uses of, 165, with past participle, 147
He she, it, 118
Hebrew, a Semitic language 27, plurals in English, 87
Hellenic stock, 25
Here, 174
High German meaning of name, 4
Hight, shows reduplication, 154
Him 127
Hind, 112
How, 174
Hungarian language, 26
Hybrids, 193
Hyphen, where placed, 195

I, pure vowel sound, 44, diphthong, 43
I, personal pronoun 117
Imperative mood, 139
Imperfect, meaning of, applied to tenses, 151 tenses, 149
Impersonal verbs, 134
Inceptive verbs, 150
Inconsistency of alphabet 57
Indefinite quantitative adjectives, 101, pronouns, 125, article, *see* Article tenses, 149 present, uses of, 151
Indicative mood, 138
Indirect object, 94 narrative, 245
Indo-European family of languages, 21, languages outside of, 26
ine feminine suffix, 80
Infinitive mood, 143 equivalent to a noun, 143, without *to*, 143, simple and gerundial, 143, primitive, 200, syntax of, 250
Inflexions, definition of, 64 in English only few, 64 mostly of English origin, 65, consequences of loss of, 66 marking gender, 80, number, 84, case, 93 comparison, 110, retained in pronouns, 127, in adverbs, 174
Inflexional and non inflexional languages, 65
ing, patronymic suffix, 18 diminutive suffix 191, verbal suffix, 144 origin, 251 errors of syntax 251
Intentional tenses, so called, 150
Interjections, 188
Interrogative pronouns, 123
Intransitive verbs, 130 becoming transitive, 131
Iranian, 26
Irish, or Erse, 2, 25
It, pronoun, 118, anticipatory subject, 206
Italic stock, 25
Its, 118

J, redundant letter 47, distinguished from *i* 59
Jutes, original home of, 4

Keltic dialects in Britain 2, race, Britons 1, 2, words in English, 9
Kine, 86
Kitten 47

Labials, 42
Lady, 82
Lady day, absence of possessive *s*, 98
Languages table of Indo European, 28, spoken and written, 29
Langue d'oil and langue d'oc, 6
Lappish, 27
Lass, 81
Last and latest, 111
Latin element in English, 10 words of 1st period, 10, 2nd period, 11 3rd period, 12 4th period, 13, proportion of, in vocabulary 14, in use, 15 prefixes, 193, suffixes, 191
Less, 111
Less and fewer, 229

Letters, Runic, 58, capital, 59 inserted or dropped, 49
Like, uses of, 233
Linguals, 42
Liquids, 41
Lord, 82
Low German meaning of, 4
ly, 174

Madam, 82
Manx, 2, 25
Many, syntax of 229
Marchioness, 81
May 167
Mediae, 52
Meseems, 94, 134
Metathesis, 50
Methinks, 94 134
Metre, definition of, 35
Might, 167
Million, 104
Mistress 81
Moods, 138
More and most, 110, 112
most in superlatives, 112
Multiplicatives, 104
Must, 167
Mute *e* final, 56
Mutes, 41
My, 127
Myself, 120

Nasals, 42
Naught, 126
Near, 111
Need 168
Neither error in use of, 261
Neuter gender, 78, verbs, 133
News, 87
No and yes 173, and not, syntax of, 258
Nominative, how to determine, 97 absolute, 218, of address 94 in analysis, 206, uses of 218
Norman Conquest, 5
Norman French words in English, 12, contained Keltic element but mainly Latin 6 influence on the formation of compounds, 17 alphabet, 58, inflexions, 65 108, formation of plurals, 98 comparison, 110
Notional verbs, 133
Nouns, definition of, 68, distinguished from pronouns 69 from adjectives, 69, common, proper, and singular, 70, proper becoming common, 72 common becoming singular, 73, collective, 74, syntax of, 229 240 abstract and concrete 75, names of materials, 73 formation of abstract, 76, gender of 78 number of, 84 table of plurals of, 84, without change of form in plural, 87 apparently plural really singular, 87 really plural used as singular, 87, syntax of 240, changing meaning in plural, 88, having two forms of plural with different meanings, 88 with no plural, 88 with no singular, 89, compound, 190 plural of, 89, case of, *see* Case verbal, 145 used as adverbs, 174, suffixes of, 191 syntax of, 218
Noun clauses, 184, how to deal with in analysis, 206
Number definition of, 84, in nouns, 84, in verbs, 152
Numerals cardinal, 103 ordinal, 104 multiplicative, 104 mostly of English origin, 104

O, sounds of, 44 plural of nouns ending in, 86
Object, definition of, 131 direct and indirect, 94, 202 retained, 138, 225 of verb an adverbial adjunct, 202, enlargement of, 202
Objective case how to determine, 97 syntax of, 224 form of in nouns and pronouns, 93, cognate, 132 adverbial relation of noun in 202
Oblique narrative, 245, cases, 99
Older and elder 111
om in *seldom*, 174
on, -oon one, augmentative suffix, 192
One, numeral adjective, 103, indefinite pronoun, 125
Only, place of, 256
Order, a part of syntax, 217 of noun in nominative, 221, in possessive, 224, in objective, 226, of adjective, 233
Orthoëpy, definition of, 32
Orthography, definition of, 32
Orthographical expedients, 56
Ought, 168
Our, ours, 127
Oxen, 86
Owe and own, 168

Palatals, 42
Parsing, directions for, 212
Participles, definition of, 146 present, 146 distinguished from other verbal forms in *ing*, 146, used as preposition 179 used absolutely, 179, common error of syntax in use of, 219, 227 past, 147 with *have*, 147, adopted with in transitives, 147
Parts of speech, definition of, 62, reduced to four groups, 63 the same word occurring under different, 63 inflected or not inflected, 64 the articles not separate, 105
Passive voice, 136
Patronymics, 18
Paulo post future tenses, so-called, 150
Peas, 88
Pence and pennies, 88
Perfect tense formed by reduplication, 153
Perfect and Imperfect as applied to tenses explained, 151
Person in verbs, 152, origin of inflexions marking 152

Personal pronouns, 117
Personification affecting gender, 79
Phonetic spelling, 55
Phonology, 32
Phrase, defined, 201, absolute 206
Pleonasm, 223, 231, 266
Plurals of nouns, *see* Nouns
Polysyndeton, 260
Possessive, forms of, 94, of nouns in apposition 95, of compound nouns, 95, *s* not corruption of *his*, 97 expressed by *of*, 96, functions of, 94, syntax of, 221, pronouns, 127
Predicate, definition of, 198 complement of, 133, 199 enlargement of, 203 logical and grammatical, 170
Predicative use of adjectives, 101, 228
Prefixes, definition of, 190 list of, English 193 Latin, 193, Greek, 194
Prepositions definition of, 177 compared with case-endings 92 need not precede nouns, 178, classification of, 179, distinguished from adverbs, 180 relations expressed by, 178 idiomatic use of, 262
Present Indefinite, uses of, 151
Pronouns, definition of, 114 distinguished from nouns, 69, characteristic of, 114 different uses of, 115, classification of, 116 personal, 117 demonstrative, 119 reflexive, 119 relative, 121 how identified, 122 compound, 124 co-ordinating and restrictive uses of, 124, interrogative 123 indefinite, 125 distributive, 126 reciprocal, 126 possessive 127 retain inflexions, 127 used as adverbs, 175, concord of, 233, syntax of relative 234
Prosody, definition of, 34 not a part of grammar, 35
Punctuation, rules for, 266

Q, redundant letter, 47
Qualitative adjectives, 103
Quantitative adjectives, 101
Quasi passive verbs, 138
Quoth, 170

Rather, 112
Redundancy of alphabet, 47, 54
Reduplication in the perfect, 153
Reflexive pronouns, 119 verbs, 130
Relative pronouns, characteristic of, 121 *that*, *who*, *which* distinguished, 124, 238, and antecedent, 121, omission of, 122 syntax of, 234
Renaissance, 6, 13
Reported speech, 245
Restrictive use of relative pronoun, 124
Retained object, 138, 225
Revival of Learning, 6, 13
Rhythm, 35
Riches, 87
Riding, 50, 104
Roman Conquest of Britain, 2 missionaries to England, 5
Romanic stock, 25
Runic characters in alphabet, 58

S plural suffix, 85
's possessive suffix, 95, 98, disguised in adverbs, 174
Sanskrit, 26
Saxons, original home of, 4
Scandinavian group of languages, 25, words in English, 18
Schleswig Holstein the home of Jutes, Saxons, and Angles, 4
Score, 104
Scotch Highland, a Keltic dialect, 2, Lowland, an English dialect, 2 *n*
Se, seo thæt, 118 *n*
Second, 104
Self 120
Semi vowels, 42
Semitic languages, 27
Sentences, definition of, 198 simple, compound, and complex, 184 what is expressed by, 198, how to correct faulty, 226 elliptical, 203, errors in, 259
Sequence of tenses, 244
Sex distinguished from gender, 78
Shall and will, 166 syntax of, 243
Sharps and flats, 40
She, 118
Should and would, 166 syntax of, 244
Sibilants, 41
Singular nouns distinguished from common and proper, 71, number, *see* Number
Sir, 82
Slavonic languages, 26
So, adverb, syntax of, 258
Solecism, definition of, 233
Sounds, elementary, in English, 46 consonants, 38 vowels, 38 mutes, 41 sonants and surds, 40 not sounded together, 48 spirants, 41 sibilants, 41, trills, 41 thin, middle, and aspirate, 52 classified according to vocal organs, 41 dropped or added to save trouble, 49 transposition of, 50, significant, or words, represented in writing, 53
Spanish influence on English language, 6
Spelling in English, difficulties accounted for, 57 phonetic, 55
Spinster, 80
-ster, 80
Stocks meaning of, 24
Subject of sentence, definition of, 198, different kinds of, 200 enlargement of, 201 ellipsis of, 68, 199
Subjunctive mood, forms of, 140, uses of, 141, 248
Subordinate clauses, 184
Such, 123
Suffixes, definition of, 190, list of important, 191

Superlatives, double, 112, not suggesting comparison, 113
Swine, 86
Syllables, division of words into, 194
Syntax, definition of, 34
Synthetic languages, 65

Table of Indo European languages, 28 feminine suffixes, 80 plural forms, 84, adjectives, 101 pronouns, 116, infinitive forms, 148, tenses, 149 conjugation, 159, 160, adverbial forms, 174, shall and will, 243, should and would, 244
Ten, 103
Tense, *see* Verb, future in subjunctive, 249
Tenues, 52
Teutonic tribes, Jutes, Saxons, and Angles were, 31 meaning of name, 3 stock, English belongs to, 25
Than, syntax of, 257, with relative 257
That, the *t* in, 119, how to determine its part of speech, 122 its restrictive use as relative, 124, 238, conjunctive, 123 omission of, 261
The, 104 uses of, 106, adverbial use of, 174, syntax of, 232
ther, comparative suffix 112, 126
There with verb preceding subject, 206
Thi, 174
Third, 104
This, 119
Thorn, the letter, 58
Thou, old uses of, 118
Thy and thine 127
To, before infinitive 143 omitted from some verbs, 143
Trills, 41
trix, feminine suffix, 80
Turkish language, 26
Twelve, 104

U, vowel sounds of, 44 diphthongal 43, distinguished from letter *v*, 59
Umlaut, 49
un, prefix, 193
Uncouth, 167
Utter, comparative adjective, 112

Verbs, definition of, 129, transitive and intransitive, 130 intransitive used as transitive, 131, converted to transitive by preposition, 131 converted to causative, 132, transitive used as intransitive, 132 causative, 132, of incomplete predication, 132, neuter, 133 auxiliary, 133, 164, notional, 133 neuter, 133 impersonal, 134 inflexions of, 135 voice, 136, active and passive, 136 alternative passive constructions, 137, retained object with passives, 138 quasi passive, 138, mood, 138 indicative 139 imperative, 139, subjunctive, decay of, 140 uses of, 141, 248, tests for, 142, infinitive, 143, resembles noun, 143 simple and gerundial 143, forms in *ing*, 144 gerund, 145 participles 146 table of forms, 148 tenses, 149 mark time and completeness, 149 simple and compound, 139 table of, 149 perfect continuous 150, so called, 150 mode of formation of, 150 perfect and imperfect, 151 advantages of our mode of marking, 151 uses of present indefinite, 151 weak and strong, 153 used as adverbs, 175, number, 152 person, 152, conjugation of, 159 defective, 163, suffixes of 193 syntax of, 240 concord of, 240, with collective nouns, 240 with plurals used as singulars 240, implying futurity, syntax of 245
Verbal noun, the infinitive a, 143, forms in *-ing*, 144
Verse, definition of, 35
Vixen, 80
Vocative, 94, 218 in analysis, 206
Voice, 136
Vowels, definition of, 38 enumeration of, 44

W, semi vowel, 42
Weak verbs, 153
Wednesday, the *es* in, 95
Welsh a Keltic dialect, 2, 25
Wen, the letter, 58
What, 123 the *t* in, 119
Which, 123
Who and which as coordinating relatives, 124
Why, 274
Widower, 82
Will, 166 syntax of, 243
Wit, defective verb 170
Witenagemot shows old genitive plural form, 98
Wizard, 82
Woman, 82
Words, definition of, 61 number in dictionary, 15, in use, 15 Keltic, 9 Danish, 18, Latin, 10, from miscellaneous sources, 18 ways of classifying, 62 disguised in form, 190
Worse 111
Worth, defective verb, 170

X, a redundant letter, 47

Y, semi vowel, 42 plural of nouns ending in, 86
Ye and you 119
Ye for *the*, 58
Yes, 173
You, 117
Your, yours, 127
Yourself, 120

CAMBRIDGE PRINTED BY J. & C. F. CLAY, AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS

THE PITT PRESS SERIES.

COMPLETE LIST

1. GREEK.

Author	*Work*	*Editor*	*Price*
Aristophanes	Aves—Plutus—Ranae	Green	3/6 *each*
,,	Vespae	Graves	3/6
,,	Nubes	,,	*In the Press*
Demosthenes	Olynthiacs	Glover	*In the Press*
Euripides	Heracleidae	Beck & Headlam	3/6
,	Hercules Furens	Gray & Hutchinson	2/-
	Hippolytus	Hadley	2/-
,	Iphigeneia in Aulis	Headlam	2/6
,,	Hecuba	Hadley	2/6
,,	Alcestis	,,	2/6
,,	Orestes	Wedd	4/6
Herodotus	Book V	Shuckburgh	3/-
,,	,, VI, VIII, IX	,,	4/ *each*
,,	,, VIII 1—90, IX 1—89	,,	2/6 *each*
Homer	Odyssey IX, X	Edwards	2/6 *each*
,,	,, XXI	,,	2/-
,,	Iliad VI, XXII, XXIII, XXIV	,,	2/- *each*
Lucian	Somnium, Charon, etc	Heitland	3/6
,,	Menippus and Timon	Mackie	3/6
Plato	Apologia Socratis	Adam	3/6
,,	Crito	,,	2/6
,,	Euthyphro	,,	2/6
,,	Protagoras	J & A. M Adam	4/6
Plutarch	Demosthenes	Holden	4/6
,,	Gracchi	,,	6/-
,,	Nicias	,,	5/-
,	Sulla	,,	6/-
,,	Timoleon	,,	6/-
Sophocles	Oedipus Tyrannus	Jebb	4/6
Thucydides	Book III	Spratt	5/-
,,	Book VII	Holden	5/-
Xenophon	Agesilaus	Hailstone	2/6
,,	Anabasis Vol I Text	Pretor	3/-
,,	,, Vol II Notes	,,	4/6
,,	,, I, II	,,	4/-
,,	,, I, III, IV, V	,	2/- *each*
,,	,, II, VI, VII	,,	2/6 *each*
,,	,, II	Edwards	1/6
,,	Cyropaedeia I, II (2 vols)	Holden	6/-
,,	,, III, IV, V	,,	5/-
,,	,, VI, VII, VIII	,,	5/-

2. LATIN

Author	*Work*	*Editor*	*Price*
Caesar	De Bello Gallico Com I, III, VI, VIII	Peskett	1/6 *each*
,,	,, II–III, and VII	,,	2/- *each*
,,	,, I–III	,,	3/-
,,	,, IV–V	,,	1/6
,,	De Bello Gallico I ch 1–29	Shuckburgh	1/6
,,	De Bello Civili Com I	Peskett	3/-
,,	,, ,, Com III	,,	*In the Press*
Cicero	Actio Prima in C Verrem	Cowie	1/6
,,	De Amicitia	Reid	3/6
,,	De Senectute	,,	3/6
,,	Div in Q Caec et Actio Prima in C Verrem	Heitland & Cowie	3/
,,	Philippica Secunda	Peskett	3/6
,,	Pro Archia Poeta	Reid	2/-
,,	,, Balbo	,,	1/6
,,	,, Milone	,,	2/6
,,	,, Murena	Heitland	3/-
,,	,, Plancio	Holden	4/6
,,	,, Sulla	Reid	3/6
,,	Somnium Scipionis	Pearman	2/-
Cornelius Nepos	Miltiades, Themistocles, Aristides, Pausanias, Cimon	Shuckburgh	1/6
,,	Hannibal, Cato, Atticus	,,	1/6
,,	Lysander, Alcibiades, Thrasybulus, Conon, Dion, Iphicrates, Chabrias	,,	1/6
Horace	Epistles Bk I	,,	2/6
,,	Odes and Epodes	Gow	5/-
,,	Odes Books I, III	,,	2/ *each*
,,	,, Book II, IV	,,	1/6 *each*
,,	Epodes	,,	1/6
Livy	Books IV, VI, IX, XXVII	Stephenson	2/6 *each*
,,	,, V	Whibley	2/6
,,	,, XXI, XXII	Dimsdale	2/6 *each*
Lucan	Pharsalia Bk I	Heitland & Haskins	1/6
,,	Pharsalia Bk VII	Postgate	2/-
Lucretius	Book V	Duff	2/-
Ovid	Fasti Book VI	Sidgwick	1/6
,,	Metamorphoses, Bk I	Dowdall	1/6
Plautus	Epidicus	Gray	3/-
,,	Stichus	Fennell	2/6
Quintus Curtius	Alexander in India	Heitland & Raven	3/6
Tacitus	Agricola and Germania	Stephenson	3/-
,,	Hist Bk I	Davies	2/6
Terence	Hautontimorumenos	Gray	3/-
Vergil	Aeneid I to XII	Sidgwick	1/6 *each*
,,	Bucolics	,,	1/6
,,	Georgics I II, and III, IV	,,	2/ *each*
,,	Complete Works, Vol I, Text	,,	3/6
,,	,, ,, Vol II, Notes	,,	4/6

3. FRENCH

Author	*Work*	*Editor*	*Price*
About	Le Roi des Montagnes	Ropes	2/-
Biart	Quand j'etais petit, Pt I	Boielle	2/-
Corneille	La Suite du Menteur	Masson	2/-
,,	Polyeucte	Braunholtz	2/-
De Bonnechose	Lazare Hoche	Colbeck	2/-
,,	Bertrand du Guesclin	Leathes	2/-
,,	,, Part II (*With Vocabulary*)	,,	1/6
Delavigne	Louis XI	Eve	2/-
,,	Les Enfants d'Edouard	,,	2/-
D'Harleville	Le Vieux Célibataire	Masson	2/-
De Lamartine	Jeanne d'Arc	Clapin & Ropes	1/6
De Vigny	La Canne de Jonc	Eve	1/6
Erckmann-Chatrian	La Guerre	Clapin	3/-
Guizot	Discours sur l'Histoire de la Révolution d'Angleterre	Eve	2/6
Lemercier	Frédegonde et Brunehaut	Masson	2/-
Mme de Stael	Le Directoire	Masson & Prothero	2/-
,,	Dix Annees d'Exil	,,	2/-
Merimée	Colomba	Ropes	2/-
Michelet	Louis XI & Charles the Bold	,,	2/6
Molière	Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme	Clapin	1/6
,,	L'École des Femmes	Saintsbury	2/6
,,	Les Précieuses ridicules	Braunholtz	2/-
,,	,, (*Abridged Edition*)	,,	1/-
	Le Misanthrope	,,	2/6
,,	L'Avare	,,	2/6
Piron	La Metromanie	Masson	2/-
Ponsard	Charlotte Corday	Ropes	2/-
Racine	Les Plaideurs	Braunholtz	2/-
,,	,, (*Abridged Edition*)	,,	1/-
Sainte-Beuve	M Daru (Causeries du Lundi, Vol IX)	Masson	2/-
Saintine	Picciola	Clapin	2/-
Scribe & Legouvé	Bataille de Dames	Bull	2/-
Scribe	Le Verre d'Eau	Colbeck	2/-
Sédaine	Le Philosophe sans le savoir	Bull	2/-
Souvestre	Un Philosophe sous les Toits	Eve	2/-
,,	Le Serf & Le Chevrier de Lorraine	Ropes	2/-
,,	Le Serf (*With Vocabulary*)	,,	1/6
Thierry	Lettres sur l'histoire de France (XIII—XXIV)	Masson & Prothero	2/6
,,	Récits des Temps Mérovingiens, I—III	Masson & Ropes	3/-
Villemain	Lascaris ou les Grecs du XV^e^ Siècle	Masson	2/-
Voltaire	Histoire du Siecle de Louis XIV, Pt I, Ch I—XIII	Masson & Prothero	2/6
,,	Pt II, Ch XIV—XXIV	,, ,,	2/6
,,	Pt III, Ch XXV—end	,, ,,	2/6
Xavier de Maistre	La Jeune Sibérienne Le Lepreux de la Cité d'Aoste	Masson	1/6

4 GERMAN

Author	*Work*	*Editor*	*Price*
	Ballads on German History	Wagner	2/-
Benedix	Dr Wespe	Breul	3/-
Freytag	Der Staat Friedrichs des Grossen	Wagner	2/
	German Dactylic Poetry	,,	3/-
Goethe	Knabenjahre (1749—1761)	Wagner & Cartmell	2/-
,,	Hermann und Dorothea	,, ,,	3/6
,,	Iphigenie	Breul	*In the Press*
Grimm	Selected Tales	Rippmann	3/-
Gutzkow	Zopf und Schwert	Wolstenholme	3/6
Hacklander	Der geheime Agent	E L Milner Barry	3/
Hauff	Das Bild des Kaisers	Breul	3/-
,,	Das Wirthshaus im Spessart	Schlottmann & Cartmell	3/
,,	Die Karawane	Schlottmann	3/-
Immermann	Der Oberhof	Wagner	3/-
Klee	Die deutschen Heldensagen	Wolstenholme	3/-
Kohlrausch	Das Jahr 1813	,,	2/
Lessing	Minna von Barnhelm	Wolstenholme	*In the Press*
Lessing & Gellert	Selected Fables	Breul	3/-
Mendelssohn	Selected Letters	Sime	3/-
Raumer	Der erste Kreuzzug	Wagner	2/-
Riehl	Culturgeschichtliche Novellen	Wolstenholme	3/-
,,	Die Ganerben & Die Gerechtigkeit Gottes	,,	3/
Schiller	Wilhelm Tell	Breul	2/6
,,	,, (*Abridged Edition*)	,,	1/6
,,	Geschichte des dreissigjährigen Kriegs Book III	,,	3/-
,,	Maria Stuart	,,	3/6
,,	Wallenstein I (Lager and Piccolomini)	,,	3/6
,,	Wallenstein II (Tod)	,,	3/6
Uhland	Ernst, Herzog von Schwaben	Wolstenholme	3/6

5. ENGLISH.

Author	Work	Editor	Price
Mayor	A Sketch of Ancient Philosophy from Thales to Cicero		3/6
Wallace	Outlines of the Philosophy of Aristotle		4/6
Bacon	History of the Reign of King Henry VII	Lumby	3/-
,,	Essays	West	3/6
Cowley	Essays	Lumby	4/
Gray	Poems	Tovey	*In the Press*
Macaulay	Lord Clive	Innes	1/6
More	History of King Richard III	Lumby	3/6
	Utopia	,,	3/6
Milton	Arcade and Comus	Verity	3/-
,	Ode on the Nativity, L'Allegro, Il Penseroso & Lycidas	,,	2/6
	Samson Agonistes	,	2/6
,	Paradise Lost, Bks I, II	,,	2/
,,	, Bks III, IV	,,	2/
,,	Bks V, VI	,	2/-
,	, Bks VII, VIII	,,	2/-
,,	, Bks IX, X	,,	2/
,,	,, Bks XI, XII	,,	2/-
Pope	Essay on Criticism	West	2/-
Scott	Marmion	Masterman	2/6
,,	Lady of the Lake	,,	2/6
,,	Lay of the last Minstrel	Flather	2/-
,,	Legend of Montrose	Simpson	2/6
Shakespeare	A Midsummer Night's Dream	Verity	1/6
,,	Twelfth Night	,,	1/6
,,	Julius Caesar	,,	1/6
,,	The Tempest	,,	1/6
,	King Lear	,,	*In the Press*
Shakespeare & Fletcher	Two Noble Kinsmen	Skeat	3/6
Sidney	An Apologie for Poetrie	Shuckburgh	3/-

West	Elements of English Grammar		2/6
,,	English Grammar for Beginners		1/-
Carlos	Short History of British India		1/-
Mill	Elementary Commercial Geography		1/6
Bartholomew	Atlas of Commercial Geography		3/

Robinson	Church Catechism Explained		2/-

6 EDUCATIONAL SCIENCE

Author	*Work*	*Editor*	*Price*
Colbeck	Lectures on the Teaching of Modern Languages		2/-
Comenius	Life and Educational Works	Laurie	3/6
	Three Lectures on the Practice of Education		
Eve	I On Marking		
Sidgwick	II On Stimulus	1 Vol	2/-
Abbott	III On the teaching of Latin Verse Composition		
Farrar	General Aims of the Teacher		
Poole	Form Management	1 Vol	1/6
Locke	Thoughts on Education	Quick	3/6
Milton	Tractate on Education	Browning	2/-
Sidgwick	On Stimulus		1/-
Thring	Theory and Practice of Teaching		4/6

7 MATHEMATICS

Ball	Elementary Algebra		4/6
Euclid	Books I—VI, XI, XII	Taylor	5/-
,,	Books I—VI	,,	4/-
,,	Books I—IV	,,	3/
	Also separately		
,,	Books I, & II, III, & IV, V, & VI, XI, & XII		1/6 *each*
,,	Solutions to Bks I—IV	W W Taylor	6/-
Hobson & Jessop	Elementary Plane Trigonometry		4/6
Loney	Elements of Statics and Dynamics		7/6
	Part I Elements of Statics		4/6
	,, II Elements of Dynamics		3/6
,,	Solutions of Examples, Statics and Dynamics		7/6
,,	Mechanics and Hydrostatics		4/6
Smith, C	Arithmetic for Schools, with or without answers		3/6
,,	Part I Chapters I—VIII Elementary, with or without answers		2/-
,,	Part II Chapters IX—XX, with or without answers		2/-
Hale, G	Key to Smith's Arithmetic		7/6

LONDON C J CLAY AND SONS,
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
AVE MARIA LANE
GLASGOW 263, ARGYLE STREET

The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges.

GENERAL EDITORS

J. J S PEROWNE, D D, BISHOP OF WORCESTER,
A F KIRKPATRICK, D D, REGIUS PROFESSOR OF HEBREW

Extra Fcap 8vo cloth, with Maps when required

Book of Joshua Rev G F MACLEAR, D D 2*s* 6*d*
Book of Judges Rev J J LIAS, M A 3*s* 6*d*
First Book of Samuel. Prof KIRKPATRICK, D D 3*s* 6*d*
Second Book of Samuel Prof KIRKPATRICK, D.D 3*s* 6*d*
First & Second Books of Kings Prof LUMBY, D D 3*s* 6*d* each
Books of Ezra & Nehemiah. Prof RYLE, D D 4*s* 6*d*
Book of Job Prof DAVIDSON, D D 5*s*
Psalms Book I. Prof KIRKPATRICK, D D 3*s* 6*d*
Psalms Books II and III Prof KIRKPATRICK, D D 3*s* 6*d*
Book of Ecclesiastes Very Rev E H PLUMPTRE, D D 5*s*
Book of Isaiah Chaps I-XXXIX. Rev J SKINNER, D D 4*s*
Book of Jeremiah. Rev A W STREANE, D D 4*s* 6*d*
Book of Ezekiel. Prof DAVIDSON, D D 5*s*
Book of Hosea Rev T K CHEYNE, M A, D D 3*s*
Books of Joel and Amos Rev S R DRIVER, D D
In the Press
Books of Obadiah and Jonah Arch PEROWNE 2*s* 6*d*
Book of Micah Rev T K CHEYNE, M A, D D 1*s* 6*d*
Nahum, Habakkuk & Zephaniah Prof DAVIDSON, D D 3*s*
Books of Haggai, Zechariah & Malachi Arch PEROWNE 3*s* 6*d*
Book of Malachi Archdeacon PEROWNE 1*s*
First Book of Maccabees Rev W FAIRWEATHER and Rev J S BLACK, LL D *In the Press*
Gospel according to St Matthew Rev A CARR, M A 2*s* 6*d*
Gospel according to St Mark. Rev G F MACLEAR, D D 2*s* 6*d*
Gospel acc. to St Luke Very Rev F W FARRAR, D D 4*s* 6*d*
Gospel according to St John Rev A PLUMMER, D D 4*s* 6*d*
Acts of the Apostles Prof LUMBY, D D 4*s* 6*d*
Epistle to the Romans Rev H C G MOULE, D D 3*s* 6*d*
First and Second Corinthians Rev J J LIAS, M A 2*s* each
Epistle to the Galatians Rev E H PEROWNE, D D 1*s* 6*d*
Epistle to the Ephesians Rev. H C G MOULE, D D 2*s* 6*d*
Epistle to the Philippians. Rev H C G MOULE, D D 2*s* 6*d*
Colossians and Philemon Rev H C G MOULE, D D 2*s*
Epistles to the Thessalonians Rev G G FINDLAY, B A 2*s*
Epistles to Timothy & Titus Rev A E HUMPHREYS, M A 3*s*
Epistle to the Hebrews Very Rev F W FARRAR, D D 3*s* 6*d*
Epistle of St James Very Rev E H PLUMPTRE, D D 1*s* 6*d*
St Peter and St Jude Very Rev E H PLUMPTRE, D D 2*s* 6*d*
Epistles of St John Rev A. PLUMMER, D D 3*s* 6*d*
Book of Revelation Rev W H SIMCOX, M A 3*s*

Other Volumes Preparing

LONDON C J CLAY AND SONS,
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
AVE MARIA LANE.

The Smaller Cambridge Bible for Schools.

Now Ready With Maps Price 1s each volume

Book of Joshua Rev J S Black, LL D
Book of Judges Rev J S Black, LL D
First Book of Samuel Prof Kirkpatrick, D D
Second Book of Samuel. Prof Kirkpatrick, D D
First Book of Kings Prof Lumby, D D
Second Book of Kings Prof Lumby, D D
Gospel according to St Matthew Rev A Carr, M A
Gospel according to St Mark. Rev G F Maclear, D D
Gospel according to St Luke Very Rev F W Farrar, D D
Gospel according to St John Rev A Plummer, D D
Acts of the Apostles Prof Lumby, D D

The Cambridge Greek Testament for Schools and Colleges

General Editor J J S PEROWNE, D D

Gospel according to St Matthew Rev A Carr, M A
With 4 Maps 4s 6d
Gospel according to St Mark. Rev G F Maclear, D D
With 3 Maps 4s 6d
Gospel according to St Luke Very Rev F W Farrar
With 4 Maps 6s
Gospel according to St John Rev A Plummer, D D
With 4 Maps 6s
Acts of the Apostles Prof Lumby, D D 4 Maps 6s
First Epistle to the Corinthians Rev J J Lias, M A 3s
Second Epistle to the Corinthians Rev J J Lias, M A 3s
Epistle to the Hebrews Very Rev F W Farrar, D D 3s 6d
Epistles of St John Rev A. Plummer, D D 4s

General Editor Prof J A ROBINSON, D D
Epistle to the Philippians Rev H C G Moule, D D
[*In the Press*
Epistle of St James Rev A Carr, M A 2s 6d
Pastoral Epistles Rev J H Bernard, D D [*In Preparation*
Book of Revelation Rev W H Simcox, M A 5s

London C J CLAY and SONS,
CAMBRIDGE WAREHOUSE, AVE MARIA LANE
Glasgow 263, ARGYLE STREET
Leipzig F A BROCKHAUS
New York THE MACMILLAN CO

CAMBRIDGE PRINTED BY J & C F CLAY, AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS